AL-BAHER

Hello! Plus Beyond Words

1st Prep

Second Term

CONTENTS



Travel and vacations

Unit Objectives

Reading	a magazine article about a tour of Spain; an online review of places in Australia
Listening	Listening: a talk about Yosemite National Park
Speaking	decide and agree on a vacation destination
Writing	a guide about a place to visit
Language	use reported speech and reporting verbs

Lessons (1 & 2)

- Vocabulary and speaking
- Reading
- Grammar
- Listening

Key vocabulary
فردات رئيسية

travel (n)	السفر	hotel	فندق	tourist	ائح
vacation	عطلة / إجازة	luggage	أمتعة السفر	tour	حلة سياحية
castle	قلعة	sightseeing	زيارة المعالم السياحية	traffic	ركة المرور
flight	رحلة طيران	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	route	سار / طريق

Extra vocabulary
إضافية

postcard	بطاقة بريدية	palace	قصر	hiking trail	سار المشي
airport	مطار	downtown	وسط المدينة	garbage	مامة
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	site	موقع (أثري)	walk (n/v)	يمشي / تمشية
coach	حافلة	attractive	جذاب	present	دية
busy	مزدحم	discover(ed)	يكتشف	platform	رصيف (القطار)
mosaics	فسيفساء	advertisement	إعلان	festival	مهرجان
decorate(d)	يزين	deer	غزال		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs
تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
say	يقول	said	said
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
fly	يسافر بالطائرة	flew	flown

Collocations
متلازمات لفظية

go	on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	have	a vacation	يقضي إجازة
	on a tour	يذهب في جولة سياحية	do	sightseeing	يقوم بمشاهدة معالم المدينة
	on vacation	يذهب في إجازة	buy	souvenirs	يشتري هدايا تذكارية
	sightseeing	يشاهد معالم المدينة			

Important expressions & prepositions
تعبيرات و حروف جر هامة

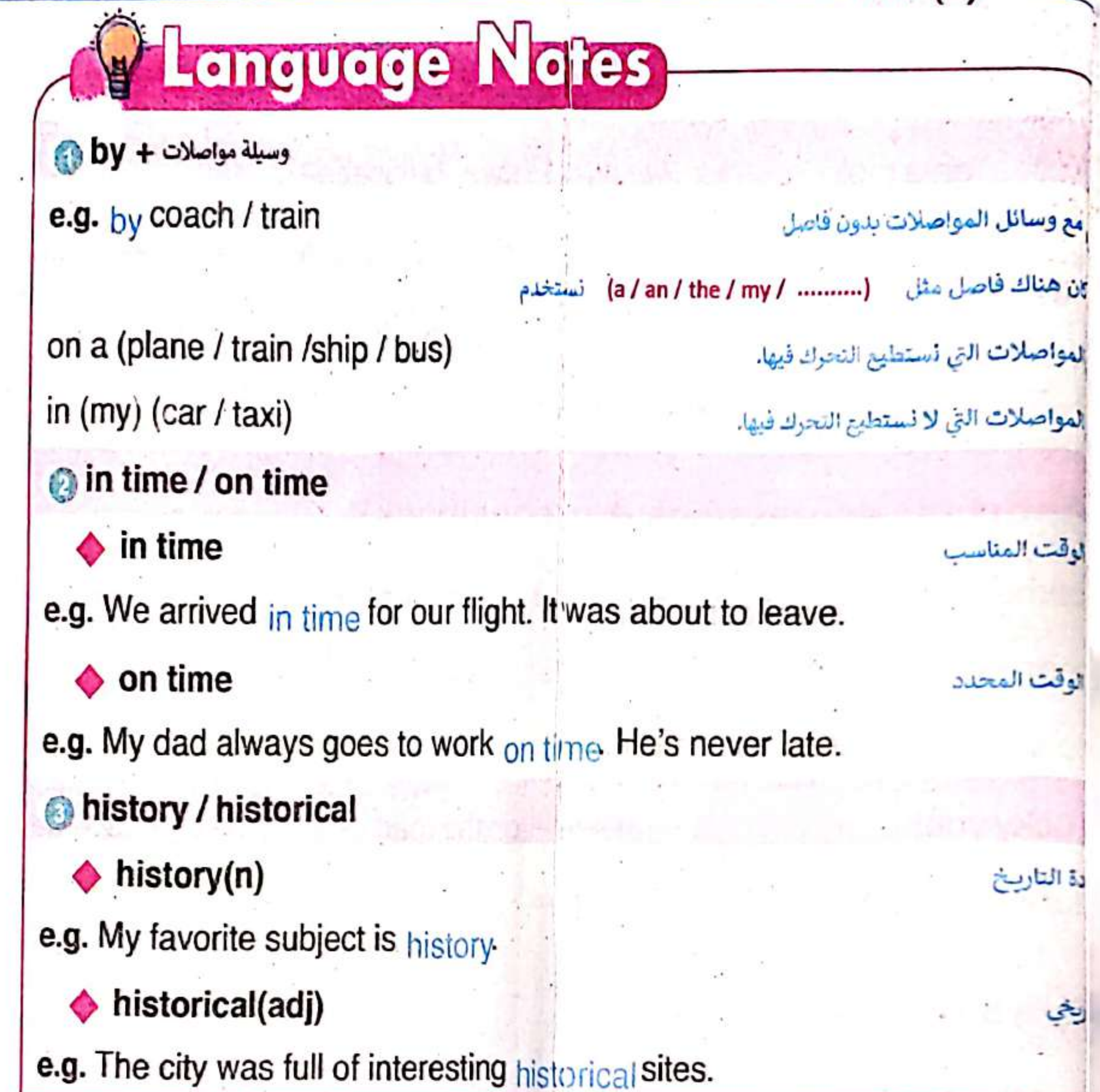
in time	في الوقت المناسب	come to an end	يصل للنهاية / ينتهي
from all over the world	من كل أنحاء العالم	famous for	مشهور بـ
do some shopping	يقوم ببعض التسوق	at the beach	على الشاطئ
Lucky you!	أنت محظوظ!	on the road	على الطريق
during the flight	أثناء رحلة الطيران		

Synonyms & Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
glad	سعيد	happy	sad	حزين
kind	لطيف	friendly - nice	unkind - cruel	قاس

Suffixes
اللواحق

-ous	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	fame	شهرة	→	famous	مشهور
		danger	خطر	→	dangerous	خطير
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	attract	يجذب	→	attractive	جذاب



Language Notes

1 by + وسيلة مواصلات

e.g. by coach / train — مع وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل

ن هناك فاصل مثل (a / an / the / my / ....) نستخدم

on a (plane / train /ship / bus) — لمواصلات التي نستطيع التحرك فيها.

in (my) (car / taxi) — لمواصلات التي لا نستطيع التحرك فيها.

2 in time / on time

- **in time** — لوقت المناسب

e.g. We arrived in time for our flight. It was about to leave.

- **on time** — لوقت المحدد

e.g. My dad always goes to work on time. He's never late.

3 history / historical

- **history(n)** — دة التاريخ

e.g. My favorite subject is history.

- **historical(adj)** — ريخي

e.g. The city was full of interesting historical sites.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I always go to school .... the bus
   a) in b) by c) on d) for
2. Don't be late. Always be .... time
   a) in b) on c) for d) at
3. Egypt has many .... places and buildings
   a) history b) historical c) historian d) historic

Lessons (1 & 2)

Read the postcard Lesson 1 SB P. 74

Dear Arthur,

We're here in Edinburgh, Scotland. There was a lot of traffic on our trip to the airport and we almost didn't arrive in time for our flight! Then, when we arrived here, we didn't have all our luggage. My suitcase was still in Frankfurt! Our hotel is great. Today, we all went on a trip by coach to the city center. We went sightseeing for hours, looking at the famous buildings and, of course, the castle. There were lots of tourists there from all over the world. I bought you a T-shirt as a souvenir. I'll give it to you when I get back.

See you next week,

William

Listening Lesson 1 WB P. 47

Kim : Did you have a good vacation, Olivia?

Olivia : Yes, we did. We went to Slovenia by plane. It was my first time on a plane, so I was very excited during the flight. We flew[1] to Ljubljana, which is the capital city.

Kim : Did you do some sightseeing?

Olivia : Yes, we went on a tour of Ljubljana and we also went to Lake Bled. We saw an amazing castle there next to the lake[2]. It's very old.

Kim : Where did you stay?

Olivia : Our hotel was great. We stayed[3] near the downtown of Ljubljana. The people there were very helpful and carried our luggage to our room.

Kim : Was there anything you didn't like?

Olivia : Well, there was a lot of traffic on the roads because there were so many tourists in the city last week. They came for a festival[4].

Kim : Did you bring back any souvenirs?

Olivia : Yes, I bought some postcards and a bag with a picture of the castle on it. I was sad when my vacation came to an end[5]!

(1) سافر بالطائرة (2) بحيرة (3) أقمنا (4) مهرجان (5) ينتهي



Lesson 1 SB P. 75

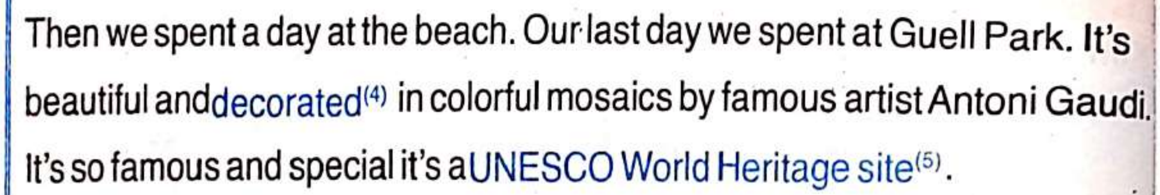
A TOUR OF SPAIN

My friend, Maya, visited Spain last year and she told me about her trip. She said that it was a beautiful country and she told me that she enjoyed her trip. So this summer, my family decided to do the same tour of Spain.

We started in the north(1) in Barcelona(2).

There were a lot of tourists, so it was very busy!

We did some shopping, as Barcelona is famous for(3) its shops.



Then we spent a day at the beach. Our last day we spent at Guell Park. It's beautiful and decorated(4) in colorful mosaics by famous artist Antoni Gaudi. It's so famous and special it's a UNESCO World Heritage site(5).

The next day, we traveled to Zaragoza to visit the famous Aljaferia Palace(6). Next, we had two days in Madrid. Maya told me that Madrid was amazing and I agree. Maya said that she didn't go to the Prado Museum, but we did. Then, Maya said that we should visit the castles in Toledo(7). They were very attractive(8). Next, we visited the old city of Córdoba(9). Maya said the food was wonderful and she was right.

Finally, we arrived in the beautiful city of Seville(10). Maya didn't go to Seville, but I'm glad(11) we did. We discovered an amazing village called Valenciana. It was full of interesting historical sites and the people were really kind.

It was a fantastic vacation!

(1)	الشمال	(2)	مدينة برشلونة	(3)	مشهور ب
(4)	زين	(5)	على قائمة اليونسكو للتراث العالمي	(6)	قصر الجعفرية
(7)	مدينة طليطلة	(8)	جذابة	(9)	مدينة قرطبة
(10)	مدينة إشبيلية	(11)	سعيد		

Reading Skills

Sequence phrases عبارات التسلسل

- Sequence words and phrases help you know where you are in the reading text.

تساعدك عبارات وكلمات التسلسل على معرفة مكانك في نص القراءة.

- Look for phrases such as: ابحث عن عبارات مثل:

(That night / The next days / Next / Then / Finally)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We were late for school because there was a lot of .... on the road.
   a) traffic b) pollution c) sports d) planes
2. I'm going on .... to Mexico.
   a) picnic b) vacation c) walk d) swimming
3. We went .... looking at the famous buildings in the city.
   a) shopping b) swimming c) sightseeing d) camping
4. We go on a plane at the ....
   a) museum b) airport c) station d) bus stop
5. Someone carried our .... to our room at the hotel.
   a) books b) cars c) luggage d) clothes
6. I bought some .... when I was in Paris.
   a) souvenirs b) medicine c) animals d) plants
7. Egypt is famous .... the pyramids.
   a) in b) with c) for d) by
8. The king lived in a ....
   a) castle b) room c) hotel d) school
9. There were a lot of .... in Barcelona. They came for the festival.
   a) farmers b) tourists c) traffic d) students

10. We went on a trip .... coach to the city cente[...]
    a) in b) on c) by d) at
11. I bought you a T-shirt as a ....
    a) souvenir b) loan c) prize d) award
12. Our .... to London was great. The plane was comfortabl[e]
    a) journey b) flight c) picnic d) travel
13. There are a lot of .... sites in Egyp[t]
    a) history b) historian c) historical d) modern
14. Did you .... some sightseeing when you were in Toledo[?]
    a) make b) do c) take d) walk
15. The word "glad" is a synonym of ....
    a) sad b) worried c) happy d) angry
16. We add the suffix .... to change the word "fame" into an adjective
    a) -al b) -ous c) -ed d) -ive
17. When we went to Alexandria, we stayed in a nice ....
    a) hotel b) garden c) shop d) restaurant
18. Our city is very busy. There's a lot of ....
    a) water b) farms c) traffic d) terrific
19. I was sad when my vacation .... to an end
    a) went b) came c) had d) took
20. My mom and I .... some shopping yesterday
    a) had b) went c) did d) made

Speaking Skills

Talking about vacations التحدث عن الإجازات

Situation	Reply
Did you have a good vacation? هل قضيت إجازة جيدة؟	Yes, I did. We went to Spain. نعم، ذهبنا إلى أسبانيا.
How did you travel? كيف سافرتم؟	We went by plane. ذهبنا بالطائرة
What did you do there? ماذا فعلتم هناك؟	We went sightseeing and did some shopping. قمنا بمشاهدة معالم المدينة وقمنا ببعض التسوق.



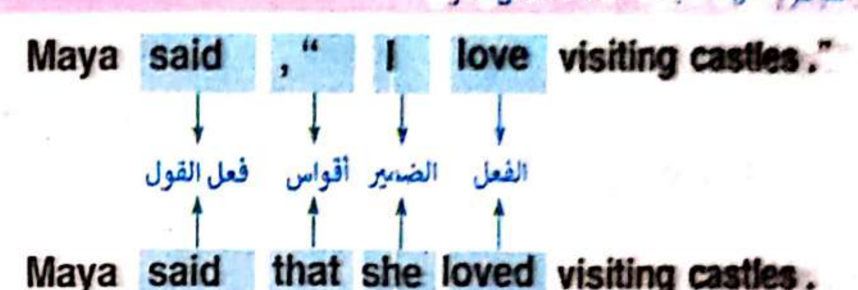
Grammar

Reported Speech

الكلام غير المباشر

It means talking about what someone else has already said.

الكلام غير المباشر ، هو الحديث عما قاله شخص آخر.



How to change into reported speech:

كيف نحول الكلام إلى غير المباشر:

1 Use a reporting verb

نستخدم فعل لنقل الكلام مثل:

- said قال - admitted اعترف - suggested اقترح (لا يأتي بعدها مفعول)
- told + مفعول

e.g. Maya said that she loved the sea.

Maya told me that she loved the sea.

2 We don't always include "that" in reported speech.

نستخدم that بدلاً من علامات التنصيص، ويمكن عدم استخدامها.

e.g. She said (that) she loved the sea.

3 Change the pronouns and possessive adjectives.

تغير الضمائر وصفات الملكية حسب المتكلم.

I → he / she

we → they

my → his / her

our → their

e.g. Rehab said, "I'm calling my mom."

Rehab said she was calling her mom.

4 We change the verbs from present to past.

تغير الأفعال من زمن المضارع إلى الماضي.

e.g. Tom said, "I 'm playing football."

Tom said he was playing football.

لاحظ: إذاكان الفعل ماضي بسيط يظل كما هو.

e.g. Lily said to me, "I enjoyed the trip."
Lily told me that she enjoyed the trip.

لاحظ: بعض الأفعال لا تتغير مثل:

should → should could → could

لاحظ: لا نغير زمن الفعل إذاكان الكلام قيل حالًا أوكان الكلام يعبر عن حقيقة:

e.g. He said he is playing football in the afternoon.
(It's 11 a.m. in the morning)
He said Cairo is the capital of Egypt.

More examples:

- Maya said, "The food is wonderful."
Maya said (that) the food was wonderful.
- He said, "We should try the new restaurant."
He suggested that we / they should try the new restaurant.

Practice on Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The teacher .... us about the new student.
 a) said b) told c) suggested d) ask
2. He said that the train to Barcelona .... delayed by 30 minutes.
 a) are b) were c) is d) was
3. He said he enjoyed .... tour.
 a) he b) my c) his d) I
4. She said that I shouldn't .... bags in the station.
 a) leave b) left c) leaves d) leaving
5. Maya said she .... go to the Prado Museum.
 a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) won't
6. He .... me that he would buy a car.
 a) said b) told c) tell d) suggested

7. He told us that our flight .... late.
   a) is   b) are   c) was   d) will be
8. Nancy said that .... was flying to Paris.
   a) we   b) they   c) he   d) she
9. Mom said she .... a new car.
   a) has   b) had   c) is having   d) have
10. They .... that they had forgotten the tickets.
   a) told   b) admitted   c) suggested   d) asked
11. Dad said he .... bought me a present.
   a) has   b) had   c) is having   d) have
12. I .... him that the match was cancelled.
   a) said   b) told   c) suggested   d) asked
13. He said he .... on vacation now.
   a) is   b) was   c) are   d) had
14. Our teacher said water .... at 100°C.
   a) boil   b) boils   c) is boiling   d) boiled
15. My friend said .... could go with him to the club.
   a) he   b) I   c) my   d) us

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. She said that she .... (don't) like pizza.
2. Tamer .... (said) his dad that he was late for school.
3. Mom told me that she .... (is going) to the supermarket.
4. She said she always .... (wear) a coat.
5. Ali .... (told) that he could speak English.
6. She said she .... (has) written a story.
7. They said they .... (love) relaxing on the beach.
8. I told Mom I was looking for .... (I) keys.
9. Tom said that .... (I'm) going to school.
10. He said the Nile .... (be) the longest river in the world.

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They're in Edinburgh, ...
   a) Egypt b) Spain c) Scotland d) USA
2. They went to the .... to take the plane.
   a) school b) sea c) airport d) station
3. They didn't arrive in time for the ....
   a) flight b) journey c) trip d) bus
4. The .... was still in Frankfurt.
   a) bag b) suitcase c) ticket d) luggage

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We take a plane at the ....
   a) station b) airport c) seashore d) school
2. Tourists buy many .... when they come to Egypt.
   a) food b) fruits c) souvenirs d) pictures
3. There was a lot of .... on the road, so I was late for school.
   a) people b) traffic c) trees d) rain

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My friend, Maya, visited Spain last year and she told me about her trip. She said that it was a beautiful country and she told me that she enjoyed her trip. So this summer, my family decided to do the same tour of Spain. We started in the north in Barcelona. There were a lot of tourists, so it was very busy. We did some shopping, as Barcelona is famous for its shops. Then we spent a day at the beach. Our last day we spent at Guell Park. It's beautiful and decorated in colorful mosaics by famous artist Antoni Gaudi. It's so famous and special it's a UNESCO World Heritage site.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Maya went on a trip to ....
   a) London b) Spain c) Cairo d) Paris
2. The underlined word " busy " means ....
   a) empty b) beautiful c) crowded d) nice

Lessons (1 & 2)

3) Answer the following questions.

1. What is Guell Park decorated in? ....
2. When did the writer visit Spain? ....
3. What's the main idea of the text? ....
4. Do you think Spain is a good place to visit? Why? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mom .... me that she was making lunch.
   a) said b) suggested c) told d) asked
2. He said the castle .... amazing.
   a) is b) was c) were d) be
3. They .... that they had broken the window.
   a) told b) suggested c) admitted d) asked

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. She said they .... (love) relaxing on the beach.
2. Nancy said she .... (is flying) to Cairo later.
3. Ali said his tooth .... (hurts).
4. Dad .... (said) mom that he would be late.

6 Complete the following dialog.

: Hello, Sara. How are you?
: Hello, Aya. 1) ....
: Did you have a good vacation?
: 2) ....
: 3) ....?
: We went to Hurghada.
: 4) ....?
: I did some shopping and bought some souvenirs.

7 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Your last vacation

Lesson (3)

- Reading
- Speaking
- Pronunciation

Key vocabulary ردات رئيسية

reviews	تقييمات	clear	صاف / واضح	camel	مل
culture	ثقافة	go diving	يغوص	national park	يقة وطنية
tent	خيمة	rock art	الفن الصخري	waterfall	ل
tour guide	مرشد سياحي				

Extra vocabulary

incredible	مدهش / غير معقول	pool	حمام سباحة	stay(ed)	يم
river cruise	رحلة نهرية	scenery	مناظر طبيعية	water park	يقة مائية
ecosystem	نظام بيئي	hike(d)	يتنزه «سيرًا على الاقدام»	trail	ب / مسار
crocodile	تمساح				

Definitions يفات

camel	a type of animal that often lives in a desert	مل
tent	something you can sleep in when camping	يمة
go diving	to swim under the water	وص
tour guide	a person who shows tourists around a place	شد سياحي
clear	you can see through it	اف / واضح

Countries and famous places ل وأماكن مشهورة

Australia	أستراليا	Italy	طاليا
Sydney	مدينة سيدني	Rome	ما (عاصمة إيطاليا)
Bondi Beach	شاطئ بوندي	Positano	ينة بوستيانو
Uluru	أولورو (منطقة تكوين صخري)	Pantheon	بد البانثيون (في روما)
Kakadu National Park	حديقة كاكادو الوطنية	Colosseum	رح الكولوسيوم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
ow يبين / يعرض	showed	shown
l يخبر	told	told

ollocations متلازمات لفظية

do	things	يقوم بأشياء	go	hiking	يذهب للتنزه مشيًا على الأقدام
	a river cruise	يقوم برحلة نهرية		swimming	يسبح

portant expressions & prepositions تعبيرات و حروف جر هامة

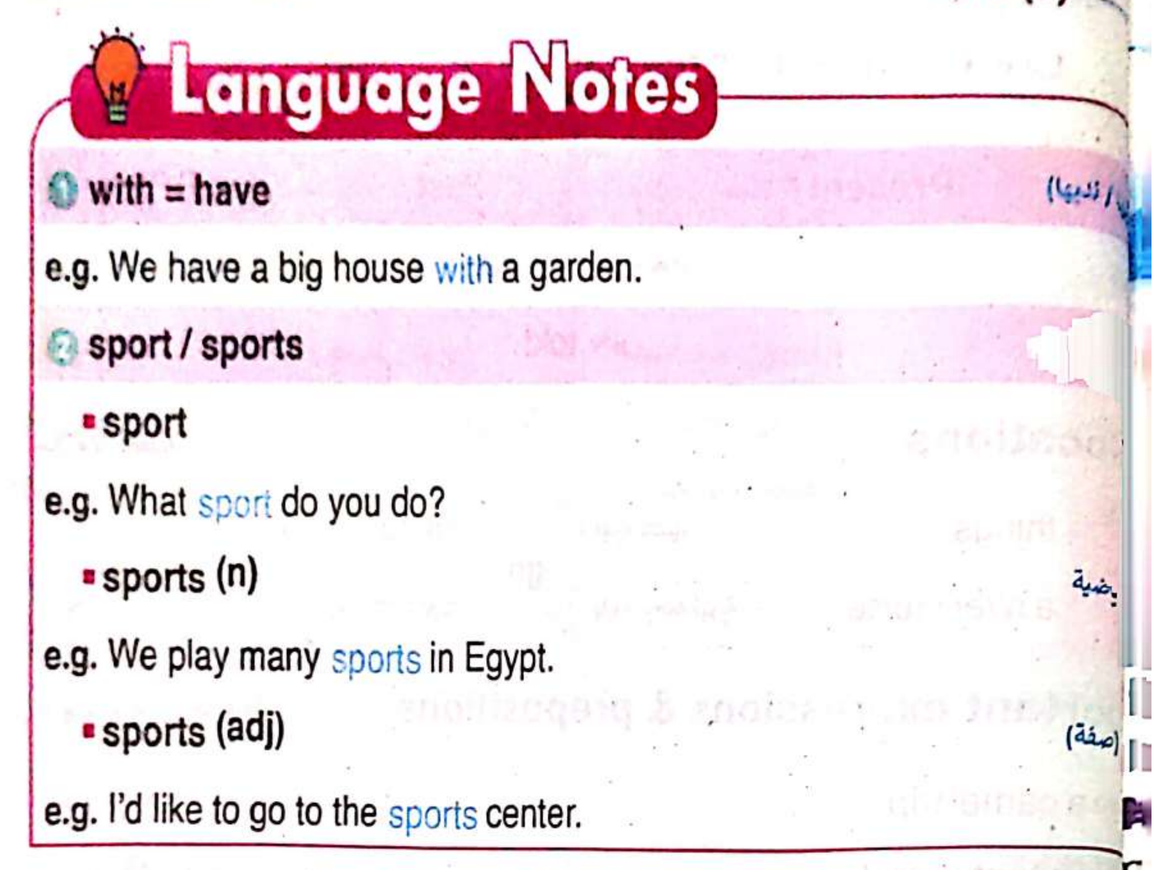
on a camel trip	يذهب في رحلة على جمل
y in a tent / hotel	يقيم في خيمة / فندق
e) wet	ممطر
e ..... the most	يحب ..... أكثر

ynonyms & Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
credible	غير معقول	amazing		credible	معقول
ear	صاف	transparent		opaque	معتم

refixes & Suffixes المقاطع البادئة واللاحقة

co-	تعنى (بيئي)	system	نظام	→	ecosystem	نظام بيئي
-n	تكون الجنسية من اسم البلد	Australia	استراليا	→	Australian	أسترالي



Language Notes

1 with = have

e.g. We have a big house with a garden.

2 sport / sports

- **sport**

e.g. What sport do you do?

- **sports (n)**

e.g. We play many sports in Egypt.

- **sports (adj)** (صفة)

e.g. I'd like to go to the sports center.

Test Yourself



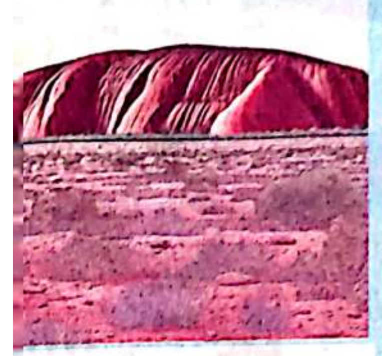
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ahmed is a .... man. He's very stro
   a) sport b) sports c) sporting d) lazy
2. My sister is the one .... long h
   a) in b) on c) with d) by
3. Football is my favorite ....
   a) sport b) sports c) sporty d) sporting



Reading Lesson 3 SB P. 78

Vacation Reviews: Australia



luru

★★★★★ 1,365 reviews

This is one of the
ost amazing places
Australia! Uluru[1] is
very important part of
ustralian culture[2] and
story.
ly uncle said that we
hould go on a camel
p, and we did that this
orning. It was great.
/e also stayed[3] for
night in a tent in the
esert.



Sydney

★★★★★ 1,966 reviews

Sydney[4] is an amazing city and you need time to see everything. Friends told me that the simplest thing to do is to go on a tour with a tour guide. This was really good advice[5]. My favorite building was the Sydney Opera House[6]. You should also visit Bondi Beach. It's near Sydney and it's beautiful.



Kakadu National Park

★★★★★ 1,209 reviews

One of the largest national parks in Australia, it has amazing things to see and do. It has rock art and incredible waterfalls[7]. You can do a river cruise and go to Cahill's crossing to see crocodiles! The park has wonderful scenery[8] and many ecosystems[9] all in one place. If you like hiking, there are miles of trails[10] to explore. There is something for everyone at Kakadu!

(1) مدينة أولورو	(2) ثقافة	(3) أقام	(4) مدينة سيدني	(5) نصيحة
(6) دار الأوبرا	(7) شلالات	(8) مناظر طبيعية	(9) أنظمة بيئية	(10) مسارات



Reading Lesson 3 WB P. 49



Vacation Advice: Rome



Frank

Hi! I'm going on holiday next month with my family. We're going to Rome in Italy. What should we see there?



Kyle

This summer my parents and I went to Rome on vacation. It's a wonderful city; we went sightseeing and saw some amazing old buildings. It's a really good idea to go on a tour with a tour guide. They can tell you all about the history. We also visited Positano on the Amalfi Coast. My mom said Positano was her favorite part of the trip. It is a beautiful fishing village with lots of pretty houses.



Holly

My parents went on vacation to Rome last year. They said it was a very big city and there were so many things to do there. They said it wasn't possible to see everything in a weekend! They visited the Roman Colosseum and the Pantheon, and they also went to a museum. My dad said that Italian ice cream was the best!

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sydney is a city in ....
   a) USA b) Egypt c) Australia d) France
2. You can .... a river cruise on the Nile.
   a) make b) do c) go d) spend
3. You should go on a camel ....
   a) flight b) van c) trip d) journey
4. We learn about the Australian .... and history.
   a) food b) sports c) culture d) language
5. A .... often lives in a desert.
   a) monkey b) camel c) lion d) horse
6. The water is so .... I see through it.
   a) dirty b) milky c) clear d) muddy
7. If you go .... , you swim under the water.
   a) swimming b) diving c) trekking d) hiking
8. .... is the capital city of Italy.
   a) Cairo b) Paris c) Rome d) Londo
9. The park has wonderful ....
   a) sand b) scenery c) ships d)
10. If you like hiking, there are miles of .... to explore
    a) walking b) trails c) ways d) streets
11. A .... is a person who shows tourists
    a) teacher b) tourist c) gardener d) tour guide
12. "Clear" is the antonym of ....
    a) clean b) opaque c) easy d) transparent
13. The prefix "eco" is related to ....
    a) environment b) river c) desert d) system
14. I'd like to .... sightseeing in London.
    a) have b) take c) go d) make

Reading Skills

Choosing answers from paragraphs اختيار الإجابات من الفقرات

To find an answer to a question: لتجد إجابة عن سؤال.

1. Underline the key words in the questions and find these in the text.
   خطا تحت الكلمات الرئيسية في الأسئلة وابحث عن هذه الكلمات في النص.
2. Read the key words sentence to check your answer.
   جملة الكلمة الرئيسية لتتحقق من إجابتك.

Speaking Skills

Expressing likes and dislikes, agreeing and disagreeing

التعبير عن الأشياء التي تحبها والتي لا تحبها، والموافقة والرفض

likes & dislikes

Positive إثبات	Negative نفي
I'd prefer to + inf.	I'd prefer not to + inf.
I'd like to + inf.	I wouldn't like to + inf.

Agreeing الموافقة	Disagreeing الرفض
I agree.	I'm not sure.
	I disagree.

Situation	Reply
Would you like to stay in a tent? هل تود أن تقيم في خيمة؟	No, I'd prefer to stay in a hotel. أفضل أن أقيم في فندق.
Let's go to a restaurant this evening. هيا نذهب إلى مطعم هذا المساء.	I'd prefer not to go out tonight. I'm very tired. أفضل ألا أخرج الليلة. أنا مرهق جدًا.
It's very hot in here. الجو حار جدًا هنا.	I disagree. I'm cold. لا أتفق معك. أنا بردان.
I think this movie is amazing. أعتقد أن هذا الفيلم مذهل.	I agree. It's great! أتفق معك. إنه رائع!

Pronunciation

Rising and falling tone

نبرة الصوت المرتفعة والمنخفضة

It's about how we say things, rather than what we say.

عبارة عن كيف نقول الأشياء، فضلًا عن ماذا نقول.

It adds emotion to the words.

يضيف عاطفة للكلام.

Listen to the sentences. Look at the lines. When is the speaker's tone high and when is it low?

استمع إلى الجمل. انظر إلى الخطوط. متى يكون صوت المتحدث عاليًا ومتى يكون منخفضًا؟

d like to go hiking in the National Park and see crocodiles!

m not sure. I'm not very good at walking miles. I really wouldn't like to see crocodiles!

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They went to .... this summer.
   a) Rome b) Uluru c) Sydney d) London
2. There were a lot of .... old buildings.
   a) interesting b) amazing c) bad d) boring
3. A .... can tell you all about the history.
   a) teacher b) tourist c) volunteer d) tour guide
4. Positano is a fishing ....
   a) village b) town c) city d) park

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can go .... a camel tr

   a) in b) on c) at d) with

2. You can read a lot of .... about famous plac

   a) reviews b) magazines c) rides d) poems

3. In the desert, you can sleep in a ....

   a) house b) tent c) flat d) villa

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box

Opera - said - tour - told - amazing

Sydney is an 1) .... city and you need time to see everything. Friends 2) .... me that the simplest thing is to go on a 3) .... with a tour guide. This was really good advice. My favorite building was the Sydney 4) .... House.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He .... me that I could visit the museu

   a) said b) told c) asked d) tells

2. I'd prefer .... in a hot

   a) stay b) stayed c) to stay d) staying

3. Mom said she .... shopping on Frida

   a) go b) going c) went d) to go

Lesson (3)



Put the words in the correct order.

1. don't - this - I - think - very good - is - movie - .

....

2. sure - I'm - not - .

....

3. one of - Uluru - places - is - the most - amazing - Australia - in - .

....



Complete the following dialog.

Omar : Hello. Are you free tonight?

Tamer: Hello. 1) ....

Omar : Would you like to go to the cinema?

Tamer: 2) .... I'd prefer not to go out tonight.

Omar : 3) .... at home.

Tamer: 4) .... What movie is on?

Omar : Harry Potter. I think it's amazing.

Tamer: I agree. It's great.



Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A review about a famous place

....

....

....

....

Lessons (4 & 5)

- CLIL
- Culture
- Writing

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

the Orient Express	قطار الشرق السريع	impact	تأثير	civilization	حضارة
the Romans	الرومان	techniques	أساليب	poverty	فقر
the Greek	اليونانيون / الإغريق	springs	ينابيع	route	مسار / طريق
structures	مباني	species	فصائل / أنواع	railway	سكة حديد

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

explored (v)	يستكشف	fortune	ثروة	rules	قواعد / قوانين
Sicily	جزيرة صقلية	cozy	مريح ودافئ	ensure (d)	يضمن
architecture	فن العمارة	seat	مقعد	station	محطة
stunning	مذهلة / خلاب	steps	درج / سلم	campsite	مخيم / معسكر
experience	خبرة	palace	قصر	the cable car	التلفريك
Dutch	هولندي	sculptures	منحوتات	enormous	ضخم / هائل
square mile	ميل مربع	deep	عميق	valley	وادي

Definitions تعريفات

wonderful	very good	رائع
cozy	very warm, safe, and comfortable	دافئ وآمن ومريح
car	a separate part of a train	عربة قطار
original	being the earliest form of something	أصلي
guide	it gives you information about a place	كتاب دليل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
catch	يلحق / يمسك	caught	caught
build	يبني	built	built
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost

Collocations
متلازمات لفظية

camping	يخيم / يعسكر	serve	food	يقدم طعامًا
lemons	يزرع ليمون	build	cities / structures	يبني مدنًا / مباني

Important Expressions
تعبيرات هامة

high quality	عالي الجودة	It took (me) time to + inf.	استغرق ..... لـ
a key part of	جزء أساسي من	follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
snowy mountain	جبل ثلجي	take the cable car	يركب التلفريك
sleeping car	عربة للنوم (في القطار)	above sea level	فوق مستوى سطح البحر

Important Prepositions
حروف جر هامة

find out about	يكتشف عن	walk up	يصعد
in search of	بحثًا عن	on the coast	على الساحل
home to	موطن لـ	famous for	مشهور بـ
far from	بعيد عن	marked by	تميزت بـ

Synonyms & Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
pleasant	سار / ممتع	lovely, enjoyable	unpleasant	غير سار
stunning	مذهل / خلاب	astonishing	ordinary	عادى
fabulous	رائع / مذهل	fantastic	common	شائع
impact	تأثير	effect	cause	سبب

Prefixes & Suffixes
المقاطع البادئة واللاحقة

تعطى عكس الصفة	uncomfortable	غير مريح
	unpopular	غير محبوب
تحول الاسم إلى صفة	snowy	مثلج
	sunny	مشمس

Countries & Cities

ل ومدن

Country		City	
Spain	أسبانيا	______	
Italy	إيطاليا	Venice	فينيسيا / البـ
France	فرنسا	Paris	باريس
England	انجلترا	London	لندن
Germany	ألمانيا	Zurich	زيوريخ
Netherlands	هولندا	______	
Czech Republic	جمهورية التشيك	______	
South Africa	جنوب أفريقيا	Cape Town	كيب تاون

Language Notes

1 make + مفعول + adj يجعل

e.g. Farming techniques made the farmers rich.

2 catch + وسائل المواصلات يلحق ب

e.g. We can catch the morning train.

3 seat / chair

- **seat** مقعد ثابت (في قطار / طائرة)

e.g. You can find a comfortable seat on the express train.

- **chair** كرسي (عادى غير ثابت)

e.g. Dad bought a table with six chairs.

4 quiet / quite

- **quiet (adj)** هادئ

e.g. Be quiet. The baby is sleeping.

- **quite (adv)** إلى حد ما / تمامًا (يأتي بعدها صفة)

e.g. You can get quite close to the penguins. (WB)
This train is quite fast.

5 not only ... but also ليس فقط ..... ولكن أيضًا

e.g. This is not only to keep the penguins safe but also because they ca[n] bite.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Scary movies .... me frightened.
   a) do   b) make   c) take   d) have
2. Hurry up! We won't .... the bus.
   a) go   b) got   c) catch   d) drive
3. Animals can be .... dangerous.
   a) quiet   b) quite   c) quit   d) quick

Reading Lesson 4 SB P. 80

The history of Sicily

When we go on vacation, we often like to explore the history of the places we visit and find out more about them.
For many years, the Romans and Greeks lived in Sicily, building cities and structures that can still be visited today. These ancient civilizations left a lasting(1) impact on the island, creating amazing architecture like theaters and forts(2).
From the thirteenth to the eighteenth century(3), Sicily was part of Spain and then Italy. This period was marked by great art and architecture, with stunning churches(4) and palaces being constructed. However, it was also a time of poverty, leading many people to move to towns, cities, or other parts of Europe and Northern Italy in search of better opportunities(5).
In the 1950s, Sicily improved its farming techniques(6) and began growing lemons, oranges, tomatoes, and producing high-quality(7) olive oil. This made the island and their farmers rich.
Today, tourism(8) is very important to Sicily. Many people visit the island every year to experience(9) its rich history, pleasant climate, and delicious food. The island's beautiful beaches, historic sites, and interesting culture attract(10) tourists from all over the world, making tourism a key part of Sicily's modern economy(11).

(1)	دائم	(2)	حصون / قلاع	(3)	قرن
(4)	كنائس	(5)	فرص	(6)	أساليب
(7)	عالي الجودة	(8)	السياحة	(9)	خبرة
(10)	يجذب	(11)	اقتصاد		

Writing Skills

Writing a summary كتابة ملخص

A summary is a short description, which gives the main points but not the details.

الملخص هو وصف مختصر يعطى النقاط الأساسية وليس التفاصيل.

When you write a summary, make notes of the most important parts of the text. Use your notes to write your summary.

عندما تكتب ملخصًا سجل ملاحظات عن أهم الأجزاء في النص. واستخدم هذه الملاحظات لكتابة ملخصك.

Main points about Sicily:

Greek and Roman history: They lived in Sicily, building cities and structures.

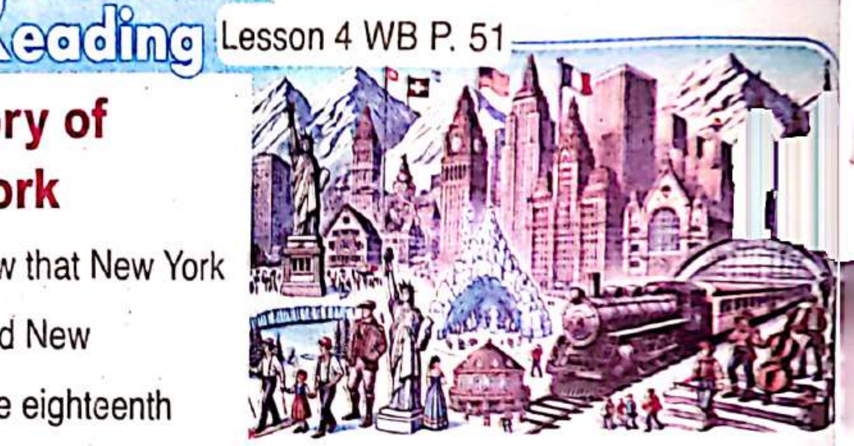
thirteenth–eighteenth century: Sicily was part of Spain and then Italy.

In the 1950s: It improved its farming techniques.

Modern Sicily: Today, tourism is very important to Sicily.

Reading Lesson 4 WB P. 51

The history of New York



Did you know that New York City was first called New Amsterdam? In the eighteenth century, Dutch people from the Netherlands(1) were the first to live there.

Later, people from England, Ireland(2), France, and Germany arrived. They built more buildings, and the city grew bigger and bigger.

Today, you can see many different types of architecture in the city. Lots of people visit New York every year to see its amazing tall buildings and enjoy its theaters(3), art, and food.

(1) هولندا (2) أيرلندا (3) مسارح



Reading Lesson 4 SB P. 81





The Orient Express

by Jack Smith

The Orient Express is one of the oldest and most famous trains in the world. It started in 1883. It served(1) wonderful food, and people had amazing vacations on the train. The original train traveled from Paris on different routes, including Italy, the Czech Republic(2), Austria, Germany(3), and Poland.

Last year my parents decided they wanted to have a different kind of vacation, with a smaller environmental impact(4). They love traveling and sightseeing in different places, but my dad doesn't like flying. He says it's very uncomfortable(5) and bad for the planet. He prefers to travel by train, but the Orient Express stopped running in 2009. Luckily, in Europe there are lots of really good trains that don't cost a fortune(6). So, we decided to travel across Europe by normal trains.

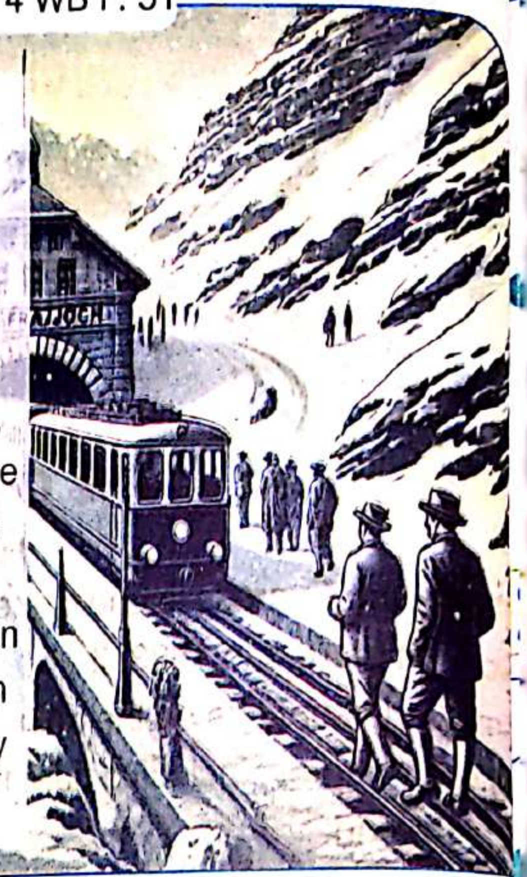
We traveled from our home in Northampton to London to catch the first one, then we went through Paris to Zurich. We saw lots of amazing snowy mountains(7) and lakes. We had a sleeping car on one of the trains. It was very small and cozy(8), and more comfortable than a seat(9) on a plane. It wasn't as beautiful as the Orient Express, but we had a fabulous(10) trip!

(1)	قدَّم	(2)	جمهورية التشيك	(3)	ألمانيا	(4)	تأثير	(5)	غير مريح
(6)	ثروة	(7)	جبال ثلجية	(8)	دافئ ومريح	(9)	مقعد	(10)	رائعة

Reading Lesson 4 WB P. 51

On top of the world

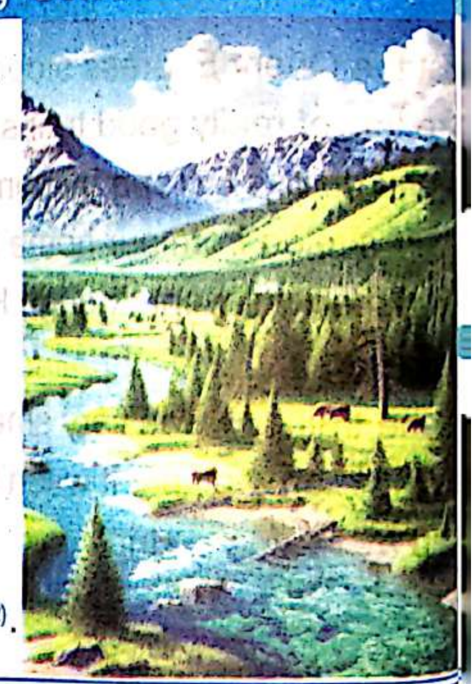
Europe's highest train station is the Jungfraujoch station in the Swiss Alps. It is about 11,000 feet above sea level. It took 16 years to build the railway line and on August 1st, 1912, the first train arrived at the station. The station is underground, but you can walk up some steps to see the amazing views of the mountains. There is also an ice palace which has many ice sculptures and a snow park where you can ski and do other winter sports. One million people visit the Jungfraujoch station every year.



Reading Lesson 5 SB P. 82

Yellowstone National Park, United States

1. Yellowstone is an enormous National Park in the United States of America. It covers parts of the states of Wyoming, Montana, and Idaho. The park's wild countryside[1] covers nearly 5,000 square miles, making it one of the largest national parks in the whole country.
2. The park has some amazing examples of nature. There are over 1,100 types of plants, 285 types of birds, and 67 types of animals, including bears, deer, and wolves[2].



Lessons (4 & 5)

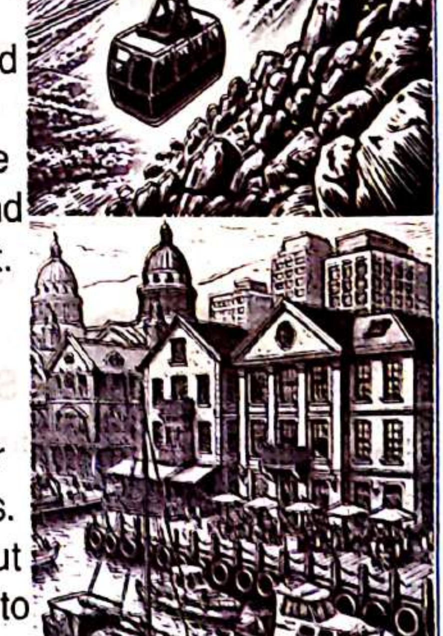
There are also high mountains, deep[3] valleys, beautiful rivers, green forests, and hot pools of water called springs[4], which allows for many different species[5] to live in their own beautiful ecosystem. The park is home to nine visitors' centers that have useful information about everything in the park, helping tourists to make the most of their visit.

There are rules[6] about what you can and can't do, for example, where you can go hiking and camping in the park. If you want to go camping, you must stay in one of the 2,000 campsites. This is not only to keep the plants and animals safe but also because it can be quite dangerous. Visitors must follow[7] these rules to ensure[8] both their safety and the preservation[9] of the park's natural beauty.

(1)	الريف	(2)	ذئاب	(3)	عميق	(4)	ينابيع	(5)	أنواع / فصائل
(6)	قواعد	(7)	يتبع	(8)	يضمن	(9)	حماية		

Reading Lesson 5 WB P. 52

Cape Town, South Africa



Cape Town is a beautiful city on the coast of South Africa. It is a very popular place for tourists because there are many things to do there.

The city is famous for its mountain. It's called Table Mountain and the views from the top are amazing! You can walk or you can take the cable car up to the top. The Victoria and Alfred Waterfront is also a nice place to visit. There are not only lots of stores but also many restaurants.

If you want to see penguins, then go to Boulders Beach. Boulders Beach is not far from Cape Town—it takes about forty minutes. You can get quite close to the penguins, but you shouldn't touch them. This is not only to keep the penguins safe but also because they can bite!

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'd like to find out about the .... of Si
   a) math b) history c) sport d) subject
2. The ancient civilizations left a .... impact on the isla
   a) short b) long c) lasting d) past
3. Theaters and forts are a kind of amazing ....
   a) architecture b) engineering c) rivers d) science
4. .... is very important to Eg
   a) Football b) Tourism c) Sport d) Building
5. We use modern .... to improve our farmi
   a) techniques b) phones c) transport d) history
6. " ...." means very warm, safe, and comfortat
   a) Cozy b) Original c) Amazing d) Wonderful
7. It was a fabulous trip. The word "fabulous" is a synonym of ....
   a) interested b) boring c) nasty d) fantastic
8. .... people come from the Netherlands to work in Cape Tov
   a) French b) Dutch c) English d) German
9. There are some .... park rules that visitors to the park must follo
   a) public b) meals c) steps d) waters
10. There's a snow park where you ....
    a) swim b) dive c) ski d) slide
11. Many people move to towns in .... of better opportuniti
    a) search b) research c) look d) order
12. Cape Town is a city in ....
    a) England b) South Africa c) USA d) France
13. It takes about 30 minutes .... to wc
    a) get b) gets c) to get d) getting
14. There are not .... many animals in the park, but also rare plan
    a) alone b) only c) lone d) lot
15. In Cape Town, you can take the .... up to the t
    a) bus b) train c) cable car d) plane

Writing Skills

How to write a guide كيف تكتب دليل إرشادي

- The purpose of a guide is to give you information about a place to visit.

الغرض من الدليل هو تقديم معلومات لك عن مكان تُحب أن تزوره.

- When writing a guide about a place, you need to include some information, such as:

عند كتابة دليل عن مكان، تحتاج إلى تضمين بعض المعلومات مثل:

- Where is it?
- What can you see?
- Where can you find out more?
- What activities can you do?
- Are there any rules to follow?

- You can use these useful phrases in your guide:

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات المفيدة في دليلك:

... has some ... / not far from ... / There are also ... / There are not only ... but also ... / If you want to ... / you must / mustn't ... / This is to ...

- You can include a photograph or drawing of the place.

يمكنك إضافة صورة أو رسم للمكان.

- Organize your writing into paragraphs. Start each paragraph on a new line.

نظم الكتابة إلى فقرات، وابدأ كل فقرة على سطر جديد.

6 Checking punctuation التحقق من علامات الترقيم

Use periods at the end of sentences.

استخدم النقطة في نهاية الجمل.

Use commas correctly.

استخدم الفاصلة السفلي بطريقة صحيحة.

Check that you have used capital letters for names, places, days, and months, and at the beginning of sentences.

تأكد من أنك استخدمت الحروف الكبيرة مع أسماء الأشخاص، والأماكن، والأيام، والأشهر، وفي بداية الجمل.

Use apostrophes to show possession: visitors' center.

استخدم الفاصلة العليا لبيان الملكية.

General Exercises

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

in - nature - to - enormous - mountains

Yellowstone is an 1)........................ National Park in the United Sta[tes] of America. It has some amazing examples of 2)........................ . There a[re] high 3)........................ and deep valleys. The park is home 4)........................ nine visitors' centers that have useful information about everything in th[e] park, helping tourists to make the most of their visit.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last year my parents decided they wanted to have a different kin[d] vacation, with a smaller environmental impact. They love traveling a[nd] sightseeing in different places, but my dad doesn't like flying. He says i[t's] very uncomfortable and bad for the planet. He prefers to travel by train, [but] the Orient Express stopped running in 2009. Luckily, in Europe there a[re] lots of really good trains that don't cost a fortune. So, we decided to tra[vel] across Europe by normal trains. We saw lots of amazing snowy mounta[ins] and lakes. We had a sleeping car on one of the trains. It was very small a[nd] cozy, and more comfortable than a seat on a plane. It wasn't as beautiful [as] the Orient Express, but we had a fabulous trip!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
   a) parents   b) dad   c) the writer   d) places
2. The underlined word "fabulous" means: ....
   a) fantastic   b) bad   c) amazed   d) boring

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?........................
4. Why did the family go on a train trip?........................
5. Why didn't they go on the Orient Express? ....
6. Do you think they enjoyed their trip? Why or why not? ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Pollution has a bad .... on the environment.
   a) result b) impact c) cause d) affect
2. We live in the 21st ....
   a) year b) week c) century d) decade
3. You have to .... the school rules.
   a) make b) follow c) take d) break

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My dad .... that flying is bad for the planet.
   a) said b) told c) suggested d) asked
2. This room is .... It's very warm and comfortable.
   a) crazy b) cozy c) lazy d) cool
3. You can .... the plane at the airport.
   a) make b) make c) catch d) hold

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

The Citadel

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

A trip to Rome

Last summer my parents and I went to Rome on vacation. It's a wonderful city. We went sightseeing and saw some amazing old buildings. We went on a tour with a tour guide. He told us all about the history of the city. We visited Positano. It's a beautiful fishing village with lots of pretty houses. We also visited the Roman Colosseum. We had a fabulous trip in Rome.

The history of New York

Did you know that New York City was first called New Amsterdam In the eighteenth century, Dutch people from the Netherlands were the first to live there.

Later, people from England, Ireland, France, and Germany arrived. They built more buildings, and the city grew bigger and bigger.

Today, you can see many different types of architecture in the city Lots of people visit New York every year to see its amazing tall buildings and enjoy its theaters, art, and food.

A guide about the Citadel

The Citadel of Cairo is a historic fortress in Cairo. It's also known as the Saladin Citadel. It was built by Salah ad-Din (Saladin) in the 12th century. It served as a defense against Crusaders. The Citadel offers panoramic views of Cairo and has many important structures, including the Mosque of Mohammed Ali and the Gawhara Palace. Visitors can explore its museums. The Citadel is a UNESCO World Heritage site. It's worth visiting.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lessons (1 & 2)

السفر	....	جولة	....
أمتعة السفر	....	مزدحم	....
حركة المرور	....	حديقة وطنية	....
هدايا تذكارية	....	مسار	....
مشاهدة معالم المدينة	....	إعلان	....
قلعة	....	الطبيعة	....
خيمة	....	قصر	....
رحلة طيران	....	سائح	....

Lesson (3)

تقييمات	....	شلالات	....
أستراليا	....	مخيم	....
ثقافة	....	مناظر طبيعية	....
مرشد سياحي	....	يغوص	....
يقوم برحلة على جمل	....	مدينة روما	....
نظام بيئي	....	تمساح	....

Lessons (4&5)

حضارة	....	أساليب	....
الرومان	....	حصون	....
تأثير	....	دافئ / مريح	....
قرن	....	أصلي	....
كنيسة	....	رائع	....
الزراعة	....	عربة للنوم في القطار	....
السياحة	....	التلفريك	....
هولندي	....	منحوتات	....
فصائل / أنواع	....	يتبع القواعد	....
دليل	....	وادي عميق	....

Review Based On Unit (7)

Vocabulary

travel	السفر	tour	
castle	قلعة	palace	
flight	رحلة جوية	tour guide	سياحي
luggage	أمتعة	clear	
sightseeing	مشاهدة معالم المدينة	go diving	
traffic	حركة المرور	tent	
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	nature	
tourist	سائح	national park	وطنية
river cruise	رحلة نهرية	scenery	طبيعية
go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	ecosystem	بيئي
stay for a night	يقيم لليلة	waterfalls	

History

explore	يستكشف	tourism	
Romans	الرومان	cozy	ودافئ
lasting	دائم	original	
impact	تأثير	cable car	
techniques	أساليب	mountain	
sculptures	منحوتات	enormous	- ضخم
railway	سكة حديد	go camping	للتخييم
a guide	دليل - مرشد		

Grammar

Reported speech

She said, "I don't like pizza."

She said (that) she didn't like pizza.

Speaking

A) Would you like to go swimming?	B) I'm not sure. I'd prefer not to go o
A) Let's watch a movie at home.	B) I agree

Test Based On Unit (7)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Cape Town is in ....

   a) France b) Italy c) South Africa d) USA

2. It's a very popular place for ....

   a) players b) tourists c) engineers d) doctors

3. .... Mountain is very famous in the city.

   a) Table b) Chair c) Tablet d) Top

4. You can take the .... up to the top.

   a) train b) balloon c) cable car d) bus

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When I was in Paris, I went ....

   a) luggage b) sightseeing c) flying d) site

2. You can go .... in the Red Sea.

   a) shopping b) camping c) trekking d) diving

3. You can .... a river cruise on the Nile.

   a) make b) do c) buy d) had

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

routes - served - made - original - train

The Orient Express is one of the oldest and most famous 1)..................... in the world. It started in 1883. It 2)..................... wonderful food, and people had amazing vacations on the train. The 3)..................... train traveled from Paris on different 4)...................... It stopped running in 2009.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

When we go on vacation, we often like to explore the history of the places we visit and find out more about them. For many years, the Romans and Greeks lived in Sicily, building cities and structures that can still be visited today. These ancient civilizations left a lasting impact on the island,

creating amazing architecture like theaters and forts.

Today, tourism is very important to Sicily. Many people visit the islar every year to experience its rich history, pleasant climate, and deliciou food. The island's beautiful beaches, historic sites, and interesting cultu attract tourists from all over the world, making tourism a key part of Sicily modern economy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "impact" means ....

a) effect b) rule c) weather d) reflect

2. We often like to .... the history of the places we vis

a) find b) explore c) invent d) study

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do you often like to do when you visit a place? ....

4. Give a suitable title to the text. ....

5. Who lived in Sicily? ....

6. Why do you think people visit Sicily? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our teacher .... that he traveled to Rom

a) said b) told c) advised d) asked

2. He told me that he .... a movi

a) watches b) is watching c) was watching d) watching

3. I'd prefer .... on a camel tri

a) to go b) to going c) going d) go

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in bracke

1. He told me that I should .... (visiting) the museur

2. She .... (told) that she loved the movi

3. Mom said the traffic .... (be) ba

4. Ali told me that he .... (is washing) the ca

7 Complete the following dialog.

Omar : Hello, Mazen. Where did you go on vacation?

Mazen : 1) ....

Omar : Rome! 2) .... ?

Mazen : I went with my parents.

Omar : Did you do some sightseeing?

Mazen : 3) .... We visited the Pantheon.

Omar : 4) .... ?

Mazen : Yes, I bought some postcards as souvenirs.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A review of a city you visited

....

....

....

9 The Reader

Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "Bring me my meal." — a. Miles
2. "Where's the boy?" — b. Servant
3. "Would you like to rise up, Your Majesty?" — c. Edward

Answer the following questions.

1. What will Edward do with Miles's brother?

....

2. How did Tom feel when he went to bed?

....

3. Why did Edward fall asleep in the inn?

....



Getting around

Unit objectives

Reading	an article about the advantages and disadvantages of electric scooters; advertisements for to
Listening	train station announcements
Speaking	talk about vacation plans
Writing	an informal letter about a vacation
Language	use the present perfect continuous

Lessons (1&2)

- Vocabulary and speaking
- Reading
- Grammar
- Listening

Key vocabulary

مفردات رئيسية

bus	حافلة - أتوبيس	get around	يتجول	motorbike	دراجة نارية
airplane	طائرة	scooter	سكوتر - دراجة بخارية	bike	دراجة
helicopter	طائرة هليكوبتر	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام	streetcar	ترام
delay	تأجيل - تأخير	movie theatre	سينما	fastest	الأسرع
platform	رصيف (القطار)	passengers	مسافرون - الركاب	slowest	الأبطأ
electric	كهربي	announcement	إعلان		

Extra vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

engine	محرك	the wheel	العجلة	popular	محبوب - شائع
battery	بطارية	power (ed)	يشغل	motor	موتور
accident	حادث	pop concert	حفل موسيقى البوب	park (v)	يركن (السيارة)
airport	مطار	train station	محطة قطار	move (d)	ينتقل
translator	مترجم	comfortable	مريح	neighbors	جيران
dangerous	خطير	singer	مغني		

Definitions

تعريفات

around	to move from place to place	يتجول
	the place at a station where you get on or off a train	رصيف
	a spoken message that tells you information	إعلان
	when there is a delay, the train is late.	تأجيل - تأخير
	the people who are traveling	المسافرون
	a small flying type of transportation. It doesn't have wings.	مروحية - طائرة هليكوبتر

Conjugation of Verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
hit	يصدم - يضرب	hit	hit
know	يعرف	knew	known
leave	يغادر	left	ieft
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
fly	يسافر جوًا	flew	flown

Collocations زمات لفظية

get	a scooter	يشتري سكوتر	build	a new apartment	ي شقة جديدة
ride	a motorbike	يركب دراجة نارية	make	new friends	ون أصدقاء جدد
	a bike	يركب دراجة	try	to buy	اول أن يشتري

Important Expressions يرات هامة

easy to ride	سهل الركوب	almost as popular as	ريبا محبوب مثل
make the air dirty	يلوث الهواء	a short walk from	لى بعد مسافة قصيرة من

Important Prepositions روف جر هامة

good for	مفيد لـ	on foot	يرا على الأقدام
wait for	ينتظر	by helicopter	لمروحية
across the road	عبر الطريق		

Synonyms & Antonyms رادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	لمضاد
noisy	صاخب / مزعج	loud		quiet	ادئ
excited	متحمس	thrilled		unhappy	زين
advantages	مميزات	merits		disadvantages	يوب

Language Notes

1 invent - discover

- **invent** يخترع (شيء لم يكن له وجود)

e.g. Graham Bell invented the telephone.

- **discover** يكتشف (شيء كان موجودًا)

e.g. Isaac Newton discovered gravity.

2 electricity - electric

- **electricity (n.)** الكهرباء

e.g. We use the sun to make electricity.

- **electric (adj.)** كهربي (يعمل بالكهرباء)

e.g. Electric cars don't make pollution.

3 other - others - another

- **other +** اسم جمع آخرون

e.g. We have other books for you.

- **others** آخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم)

e.g. Some people are coming on bikes. Others are coming on foot.

- **another +** اسم مفرد آخر

e.g. We have another book for you.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The computer was .... in 1942.
   a) discovered b) invented c) built d) invited
2. I need to talk to .... doctors.
   a) another b) others c) other d) each
3. Are .... scooters a good idea?
   a) electric b) electricity c) electronic d) electron

Reading Lesson 1 SB P. 85

Are electric scooters a good idea? by Hayley Jac



People have been finding new ways[1] to travel since they invented the wheel. Nowadays, electric scooters are almost as popular[2] as bikes, buses, cars, or streetcars for getting around busy streets in towns and cities. Electric scooters don't have engines like cars do. They have batteries powering an electric motor so they can go much faster than normal[3] scooters.

Electric scooters are easy to ride and park. They're good for the plane because they don't make the air dirty. However, some people think th electric scooters can be more dangerous[5] than normal scooters becau there are many accidents[6]. Also, they are expensive and are only good short trips.

I've been speaking to different people since I started writing this article[7] find out their opinions[8]. I asked them, "Are electric scooters a good idea

"I've been riding a motorbike[9] to work for four years. Then, I read about h bad they are for the planet. Motorbikes are really noisy[10], too. Now, I rea want to sell my motorbike and get a nice, quiet[11] electric scooter instea

Fred Logan, 22

"Electric scooters are dangerous! Last Friday, I was waiting for my frie outside the movie theater[12]. I was just standing there when a scooter me. I didn't hear it until it was too late[13]."

Ruby Edwards, 34

(1)	طرق	(2)	مشهور	(3)	عادى	(4)	كوكب	(5)	طير
(6)	حوادث	(7)	مقال	(8)	أراء	(9)	دراجة نارية	(10)	زعج
(11)	هادئ	(12)	سينما	(13)	فات الأوان				

Reading Skills

nderstanding the difference between facts and opnions.

فهم الفرق بين الحقائق والآراء.

A fact is something that is true:

الحقيقة هي شيء صحيح.

g. Electric scooters don't have engines.

An opinion is a person's feelings or thoughts about something:

الرأي هو شعور شخص أو أفكاره عن شيء ما.

g. Electric scooters are dangerous.

Listening Skills

nderstanding announcements: **فهم الإعلانات:**

an be difficult to understand announcements, but listen carefully

cause they might have important information for you.

يمكن أن يكون من الصعب فهم الإعلانات، ولكن استمع بعناية لأنها قد تحتوي على معلومات هامة لك.

and listen for key words.:

g. times and places, to help you understand the important information.

حاول واستمع للكلمات الأساسية مثلاً، المواعيد والأماكن، لتساعدك في فهم المعلومات الهامة.

Reading Lesson 1 WB P. 54

Today we're at the biggest pop concert[1] of the year! Most singers arrived last night, but some are arriving by helicopter this morning. I can hear some people arriving on noisy motorbikes too. The park is a short walk from the train and bus stations[2], so most people are coming here on foot from th stations. Others are riding bikes. Everyone is happy and excited[3]. It's going be a great day!

I'm at the airport[4], waiting for my aunt and uncle to arrive here in San Francisco by airplane. They're flying here from Paris. They like visiting us because they like traveling around[5] the city by streetcar. Aunt Lucy says it's the most comfortable[6] way to see the city. I'd like to go around on an electric scooter, but my dad says it's dangerous.

(1)	حفل موسيقى	(2)	محطات	(3)	متحمس
(4)	مطار	(5)	يتجول حول	(6)	مريح

Reading Lesson 2 SB P. 86

We have been living in Alexandria since 2015, and I have been traveling to school by bus since I moved[1] here. My mom doesn't go to work, but she has been going to night school[2] for the last two years because she's studying to become a translator[3]. So far, she has been learning French, Spanish, and Arabic. She's very good, and she can talk to people now. We have been making a l new friends since we moved here, and now we know our neighbors[4] really My uncle has been trying to buy a house in the same street[5] as us for a now, but people don't want to move! They have been building a new apart block[6] across the road from his house and it has been very noisy.

(1)	انتقل	(2)	مدرسة ليلية	(3)	مترجم
(4)	جيران	(5)	نفس الشارع	(6)	عمارة



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

My dad goes to work by ....

a) foot b) bus c) airplane d) horse

We travel by .... to other countries.

a) bike b) motorbike c) scooter d) airplane

.... scooters are almost as popular as bikes.

a) Electronic b) Electric c) Gas d) Solar

Some people prefer .... for getting around busy streets in cities.

a) streetcars b) buses c) horses d) cars

Electric scooters don't have .... like cars.

a) wheels b) engines c) wings d) batteries

I've been .... a motorbike to work for four years.

a) playing b) driving c) riding d) flying

Motorbikes are really ....

a) slow b) noisy c) big d) quiet

I was waiting .... the bus outside the school.

a) to b) in c) for d) by

He had a/an .... yesterday. A car hit him.

a) accident b) holiday c) prize d) medal

I usually go to school .... foot.

a) in b) by c) to d) on

Electric scooters are .... to ride.

a) bad b) easy c) big d) hard

Cars and buses make the air ....

a) clean b) clear c) dirty d) healthy

When there is a .... , the train is late.

a) delay b) delete c) wind d) platform

There's a/an .... for the passengers on the train going to Paris.

a) advertisement b) announcement c) notice d) claim

People use airplanes to travel to .... countries.

a) another b) other c) others d) others'

16. .... are the people who are trave[illegible]

a) Teachers b) Runners c) Drivers d) Passeng[illegible]

17. Scooters are dangerous. They can cause many ....

a) fruits b) sports c) magazines d) accidents

18. I've been .... new frie[illegible]

a) making b) doing c) having d) getting

19 Which .... does the train to Luxor leave fr[illegible]

a) way b) read c) platform d) street

20 Electric scooters have .... powering an electric mo[illegible]

a) bags b) batteries c) poles d) bottles

Grammar

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present perfect continuous to talk about actions or situatio[illegible] that began in the past are still happening now.

تستخدم زمن المضارع التام المستمر للحديث عن أفعال ومواقف بدأت في الماضي وما زالت تحدث الآن.

e.g. I have been playing football.

Form التكوين

They / We / You / اسم جمع + have ('ve) + been + v-ing.

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has ('s) + been + v-ing.

e.g. People have been finding ways to travel since they invented the wheel.

e.g. He has been riding a motorbike for four years.

Negative النفي

They / We / You / اسم جمع + haven't + been + v-ing.

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + hasn't + been + v-ing.

e.g. I haven't been going to the gym for a year.

e.g. She hasn't been practicing the piano for a year.

Question السؤال

/ No question:

Have / Has + sub. + P.P ...?

g. Have you seen the new teacher? - Yes, I have.
g. Has Ali bought a new bike? - No, he hasn't.

question:

How long + have / has + sub. + been + v-ing. ...?

g. How long has he been playing on the computer?
He has been playing on the computer for 2 hours.
He has been playing on the computer since 3 o'clock.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

or لمدة	since منذ	all (day - morning) طوال

Note: ملحوظة:

for + a period of time فترة زمنية محددة		since + a specific point in time بداية نقطة زمنية محددة	
a week / a month		- 2023 / April	- 2 o'clock
2 days / 3 years		- yesterday - morning	- Saturday
2 hours	- a long time	- last week	
ages	- the last week	- past simple: I was born	

e.g. He has been reading that book for 2 hours.
e.g. He has been reading that book since morning.
e.g. He has been reading that book all day.

Remember تذكر:

We don't use stative verbs with the present perfect continuous like:

, know, like, and understand.

لا نستخدم أفعال الحالة مع زمن المضارع التام المستمر مثل: يحب، يعرف، يحب ويفهم.

e.g. I have known Ali for a long time. (not have been knowing).
e.g. It has been hot all week. (not has been being).

Practice on Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We .... in Alexandria since 20
   a) have been living b) are living
   c) has lived d) lived
2. My brother .... riding a motorbike to work for 5 ye
   a) has been b) has c) is d) had
3. We have .... Spanish for four ye
   a) been learning b) learning c) learn d) learnt
4. I .... flowers in the garden since morn
   a) have been planting b) am planting
   c) has planted d) planted
5. Mom .... cooking lunch for two ho
   a) is b) are c) has d) has been
6. How .... have you been going to this scho
   a) much b) long c) often d) many
7. She's been living in London .... last Mar
   a) in b) since c) for d) by
8. My dad has been working as a teacher .... 20 yea
   a) since b) to c) for d) ever
9. I've been playing tennis since I .... 10 years
   a) am b) was c) has been d) is
10. It .... all day. The streets are mud
    a) is raining b) was raining
    c) has been raining d) rained

Lessons (1&2)

1. My uncle .... trying to buy a new house for a long time.
   a) has been   b) was   c) is   d) has
2. I've been speaking English .... I was two years old.
   a) for   b) when   c) since   d) after
3. Sara has .... tennis for three years.
   a) be played   b) be playing
   c) been playing   d) playing
4. I've been waiting for the bus .... 2 o'clock.
   a) for   b) since   c) in   d) at
5. They have been building a school .... the last week.
   a) since   b) at   c) for   d) when

2 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

I've .... (be/plant) flowers in the garden.

She's .... (be/go) to that school for six years now.

Mom .... (clean) the flat. She's tired now.

Sara .... (have) been sleeping for a long time.

How long have you .... (live) in your house?

We .... (learn) English for seven years now.

My dad .... (work) as a teacher since I was born.

I've been doing my homework .... (for) morning.

It has .... (be) hot all week.

0. I .... (know) my best friend since I was in grade 6.

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, o

1. There's a .... concert to
   a) music b) jaz c) pop d) folk
2. Some singers are arriving by ....
   a) airplane b) helicopter c) train d) bus
3. The park is a .... walk from the train sta
   a) long b) small c) short d) tall
4. Everyone is happy and ....
   a) unhappy b) excited c) sad d) tired

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the bo

airplane - scooter - traveling - foot - streetcar

I'm at the airport, waiting for my aunt and uncle to arrive here in Francisco by an 1).................... They're flying here from Paris. They visiting us because they like 2)...................... around the city by 3) .... Aunt Lucy says it's the most comfortable way to see the city. I'd like to around on an electric 4) ...., but my dad says it's dangerous

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My house is near the school, so I go ....
   a) by bus b) by car c) on foot d) by horse
2. Electric scooters are .... to r
   a) big b) easy c) hard d) small
3. There's an .... that the train will be l
   a) advertisement b) announcement c) notice d) advert
4. My brother .... in his office for two hours r
   a) is working b) has been working c) work d) worked
5. .... have you been living in this hou
   a) How long b) How often c) When d) Where
6. My uncle .... a doctor since 1
   a) has been b) has been being c) has d) was



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Electric scooters don't have engines like cars do. They have batteries powering an electric motor so they can go much faster than normal scooters. Electric scooters are easy to ride and park. They're good for the planet because they don't make the air dirty. However, some people think that electric scooters can be more dangerous than normal scooters because there are many accidents. Also, they are expensive and are only good for short trips.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The word "normal" is opposite to ....

   a) private b) special c) ordinary d) usual

2. Electric scooters are very .... nowadays.

   a) strange b) big c) popular d) unpopular

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ....
4. What's the main idea of the text? ....
5. How many engines do electric scooters have? ....
6. What do you think about electric scooters? ....

5 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. I've been studying English .... (at) the last week.
2. They .... (play) a match for two hours now.
3. How long have you .... (be) friends? - Since 2020.
4. Sara has been cooking lunch .... (for) she came back from school.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Electric scooters

....

....

....

....

Lesson (3) • Reading • Speaking • Pronunciation

Key vocabulary ات رئيسية

bus tours	جولات بالحافلة	single person	فرد واحد	tickets	
bike tours	جولات بالدراجة	cost (n)	تكلفة	10% off	٪١٠ م
date	تاريخ اليوم	book (ed)	يحجز		

Extra vocabulary ات إضافية

include (d)	يشمل - يتضمن	area	منطقة	downtown	ط المدينة
details	تفاصيل	plans	خطط	respect (n/v)	رم - احترام
climb (ed)	يتسلق	diversity	تنوع	during	
groups	مجموعات	island	جزيرة	Hong Kong	ينة هونج كونج
way	طريقة	buildings	مباني	minute	قة

Definitions فات

tour	a visit to and around a place	لة سياحية
tour guide	a person whose job is to show visitors around a place	شد سياحي
tourist	a person who visits a new place	ح

Collocations زمات لفظية

make	plans	يضع خطط	**book**	a vacation	جز إجازة
	dinner	يعد العشاء		a ticket	جز تذكرة
watch	the match	يشاهد المباراة	**do**	a city break	وم باستراحة في المدينة

Important Expressions and Prepositions ارات وحروف جر هامة

get 10 % off	يحصل على خصم 10 %	from the air	الجو
per person	للفرد الواحد	by mistake	خطأ
take a taxi	يركب تاكسي	on a tour	جولة
with so much to see	بها الكثير لرؤيته	by the window	انب النافذة

Lesson (3)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P	Present		Past	P.P
see	يرى	saw	seen	cost	يتكلف	cost	cost
come	يأتي	came	come	tell	يخبر	told	told

Synonyms & Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
amazing	مذهل	awesome		ordinary	عادي
per	لكل (واحد)	each		all	الجميع
expensive	غالي	costly		cheap - inexpensive	رخيص

Suffixes

اللواحق

	Function	Example			
-ful	تكون الصفة من الكلمة	beauty	الجمال	beautiful	جميل
		use	استخدام	useful	مفيد
-ist	تعطي اسم الوظيفة	tour	جولة	tourist	سائح
		science	علوم	scientist	عالم

Language Notes

1. **get on** يركب (مواصلات)

e.g. Charline wanted to go to New York, but he got on the bus for Boston by mistake.

2. **get off** ينزل (من المواصلات)

e.g. Most people got off the streetcar when it stopped by the mall.

3. **get back** يرجع

e.g. If you get back early from school, please can you make dinner?

4. **get around** يتجول

e.g. When I visit a new city, I like getting around by bike. It's a great way to see everything.



Reading Lesson 3 SB P. 88

City Bus Tour

Day tour to San Francisco:

Come with us on a bus tour around this beautiful city!

Dates of tours:

March 12^{th}, 18^{th}, 23^{rd} and April 4^{th}, 11^{th}

What do our tickets include?

- Trip to and from downtown on our comfortable buses.
- Interesting tour guide to tell you about all the amazing places you visit
- Lunch at a popular restaurant.

Times:

- We leave at 7 a.m. and get back at 8 p.m.

Prices:

Sing person: $150 Two people: $110 each

Book early and get 10% off.

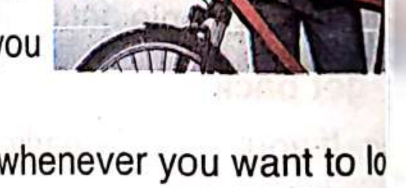


Reading Lesson 3 SB P. 88

TOKYO BIKE TOURS

Get on a bike and join us on a tour of this amazing city!

- Bus tours only take you to popular places where all the tourists go. Tokyo Bike Tours are a better way to get around because our guides show you the real city!



- Small groups only - you can get off your bike whenever you want to look at something!

Tours every Monday, 9:30 a.m. - 3 p.m

Cost: 13,000 ¥ per person (tour guide and bike included)





Reading Lesson 3 WB P. 56

Helicopter tours of Hong Kong

Hong Kong is a city of 263 islands, amazing mountains, and beautiful beaches with so much to see. It is also one of the greenest cities in the world. Only 25% of the land has buildings and houses. So, the best way to see the area and this beautiful city is by helicopter! You can see the tall city buildings, the beautiful beaches, and the islands from the air!

Prices for groups of six:

HK$3,000 per person — 15-minute flight

HK$4,500 per person — 30-minute flight

HK$6,000 per person — 45-minute flight



Flight details:

Flights leave from the Royal Star Hotel.

Please arrive 30 minutes before the flight.

Tours Monday to Sunday from 9 a.m. to 4 p.m.

Reading Skills

Recognizing text types **التعرف على أنواع النصوص:**

Advertisements try to draw our attention, by using fun and colorful text, or capital letters.

تحاول الإعلانات جلب انتباهنا عن طريق استخدام نص مرح وملون، أو حروف كبيرة.

They use positive adjectives to sell the ideas to us, and present opinions as facts. Sometimes, they have prices, too.

- يستخدمون صفات إيجابية لبيع الأفكار لنا ويقدمون الآراء على أنها حقائق وأحيانًا يكون لذلك أثمان أيضًا.



Lesson 3 WB P. 57

Injy : What are you doing, Nancy?

Nancy : Mom and Dad are going to book[1] a vacation, so I'm looking online for some ideas[2]. They'd like to visit Canada.

Injy : Oh, that's exciting. What do you want to do?

Nancy : I really want to go to the beach, but I think Mom wants to do a city break.

Injy : Hmm... **how about** a trip to Ottawa? It's the capital city[3].

Nancy : I don't know. Are there any beaches near Ottawa?

Injy : No, but it's near the lakes[4]. You could stay on a boat.

Nancy : Dad likes walking and climbing, but he doesn't like boats. He plans to stay in a hotel.

Injy : I know. **What about** a trip to Vancouver[5]? You can do a tour of the city. You can go walking or climbing in the mountains[6]. And there are some amazing beaches, too. Vancouver has everything.

Nancy : Oh, wow! **That sounds great!** I'd like to go to Vancouver. Let's find it online[7]!

(1)	يحجز	(2)	أفكار	(3)	العاصمة	(4)	بحيرات
(5)	جزيرة فانكوفر	(6)	جبال	(7)	عبر الإنترنت		

Exercises on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can go on a .... tour around the city.
   a) plane b) bus c) camel d) ship
2. The plane .... at 7 a.m.
   a) leaves b) drives c) runs d) sails
3. The train is at the platform now. Let's .... it.
   a) run b) get back c) get on d) get to
4. Hong Kong is a beautiful city. There's so .... to see.
   a) many b) much c) long d) big
5. Our tickets .... a trip to the castle.
   a) take b) contain c) include d) has
6. Anna didn't know how to .... the city, so she took a taxi.
   a) get around b) get off c) get back d) get on
7. They decided to get .... the streetcar and walk around the city.
   a) on b) off c) around d) back
8. A/An .... shows visitors around a place.
   a) engineer b) tour guide c) driver d) tourist
9. If you book a vacation early, you get 20% ....
   a) in b) off c) out d) of
10. When we arrive at school, we get .... the bus.
    a) in b) at c) by d) off
11. My dad is going to .... a vacation?
    a) book b) look c) cook d) walk
12. When we went to Paris, we .... in a hotel.
    a) ran b) stayed c) live d) built
13. We get .... from school at 3 p.m.
    a) to b) off c) around d) back
14. You can see the islands from the air by a ....
    a) helicopter b) bus c) train d) bike
15. The trip costs 150 pounds .... person.
    a) all b) some c) per d) at
16. We had lunch at a .... yesterday.
    a) bank b) restaurant c) school d) shop

17. The word "exciting" is a synonym of ....

    a) boring b) interested c) awesome d) ordinary

18. My mom prefers to .... a city bre

    a) make b) take c) have d) do

19. We .... two tickets to watch the mat

    a) sold b) booked c) gave d) looked

20. How much does this trip .... ? - 170 poun

    a) have b) take c) cost d) sound



Speaking

1) Talking about vacation plans

- I'm thinking about booking a vacation.	- I plan to ... .
- I'd like to go	- I really want to visit ... .

2) Making suggestions:

- Would you like to + inf. ...?	- How about + n / v-ing ...?
- What about + n / v-ing ...?	- You could + inf. .

Responding

Accepting	Refusing
- That sounds great!	- I don't know.
- Great idea!	- No, I don't like ...
- Yes, I'd love to.	- I'm not very keen on that.

Examples:

A: How about a trip to Vancouver? **B:** That sounds great!

A: Would you like to go to the zoo? **B:** No, I don't like animals.

Pronunciation

Silent Letters الحروف الصامتة

الكلمات تحتوي على حروف لا تنطق، مثل:

climb	يتسلق	island	جزيرة	knife	سكين	what	اذا
lamb	خروف صغير	two	إثنان	know	يعرف	when	
comb	مشط	answer	إجابة	knee	ركبة	white	

General Exercises

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

tours - flights - capital - get on - book

Tokyo is a beautiful city. It's the 1) .... city of Japan. You can 2) .... a vacation and enjoy seeing many things there. You can 3) .... a bike and go on a tour of this amazing city. Bus 4) .... can take you to popular places where all the tourists go.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hong Kong is a city of 263 islands, amazing mountains, and beautiful beaches with so much to see. It is also one of the greenest cities in the world. Only 25% of the land has buildings and houses. So, the best way to see the area and this beautiful city is by helicopter! You can see the tall city buildings, the beautiful beaches, and the islands from the air!

... for groups of six:

HK$3,000 per person — 15-minute flight

HK$4,500 per person — 30-minute flight

HK$6,000 per person — 45-minute flight

Flight details:

Flights leave from the Royal Star Hotel.

Please arrive 30 minutes before the flight.

Tours Monday to Sunday from 9 a.m. to 4 p.m.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The antonym of the underlined word "beautiful" is ....
   a) pretty b) nice c) lovely d) ugly
2. Buildings and houses are only .... of the land.
   a) 30% b) 45% c) 25% d) 20%

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How many people can each tour take? ....
4. Give a suitable title to the text. ....
5. How many islands are there in Hong Kong? ....
6. Where do the flights leave from? ....

3 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brac

1. How about .... (go) on a bus
2. Mom has .... (clean) the house. It's very clean
3. .... (When) have you been learning English? - For seven y
4. He has been at this school .... (when) he was six years

4 Complete the following dialog.

Mazen and Ziad are talking about vacation plans.

Mazen : Hi Ziad. You look excited!

Ziad : Yes. 1) ....

Mazen : Vacation! That's exciting! 2) ....

Ziad : I really want to go to Paris.

Mazen : 3) ....

Ziad : I'm booking a flight online.

Mazen : Have a nice vacation!

Ziad : 4) ....

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A tour of a famous city

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons (4&5)

- CLIL
- Writing
- Culture

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

wealthy	ثري - غني	government	حكومة	freedom	حرية
director	مدير	climate	مناخ	goods	بضائع
caravan	قافلة	transportation	النقل	pound	رطل "وحدة وزن"
informal	غير رسمي	back	ظهر	feet	أقدام "مقياس للطول"

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

housewife	ربة منزل	childhood	طفولة	possibility	إمكانية - احتمال
determined	عازم / مصمم	pilot	طيار	hot air balloon	منطاد
alone	بمفرده	desert area	منطقة صحراوية	scared	خائف
rely on	يعتمد على	countryside	الريف	hole	ثقب
sports day	يوم رياضي	crowd	حشد - جمهور	miss (ed)	يفتقد
mountainsides	جوانب الجبال	mile = (1.6 km)	ميل	llama	حيوان اللاما

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
keep	يربي	kept	kept
take care	يعتني	took care	taken care
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

have	a good education	ينال تعليمًا جيدًا	get	scared	يخاف
	a great time	يقضي وقتًا رائعًا		a prize	يحصل على جائزة
carry	people	يحمل الناس	keep	llamas	يربي حيوان اللاما
	goods	يحمل بضائع		animals	يربي حيوانات

Important Expressions

fascinated by	مفتون - مبهور بـ	through her childhood	طفولتها
to her	بالنسبة لها	make it easy for ... to ...	من السهل لـ ... أن ...
120 feet	120 قدم	the ships of the desert	الصحراء
400-meter race	سباق لمسافة 400 مترًا	come second	على المركز الثاني
take care of	يعتني بـ	C U soon = See you soon	قريبًا

Important Prepositions

perfect for	مناسب - مثالي لـ	at the start of	بداية
for a while	لفترة قصيرة	across the desert	الصحراء
pay for	يدفع ثمنًا لـ	give up	يستسلم
ask for	يطلب		

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
heavy	ثقيل	large		light	خفيف
wealthy	ثري - غني	rich		poor	فقير
peaceful	هادئ - مسالم	quiet / calm		noisy / violent	صاخب - عنيف

Prefixes & Suffixes

		Function	Example			
Prefix	in-	تعطي عكس الصفة	formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي
Suffix	-hood	تعطي الاسم من الكلمة	child	طفل	childhood	طفولة
			mother	أم	motherhood	أمومة

Language Notes

1 work for / in

- **work for** يعمل لدى / لصالح (شركة - مؤسسة - حكومة)

e.g. Her father worked for the government.

- **work in** يعمل في (مكان)

e.g. My dad works in a school / a bank / an office.

2 alone / lonely

- **alone = by (himself)** بمفرده

e.g. She was the first woman to fly across the Atlantic Ocean alone.

- **lonely** يشعر بالوحدة

e.g. She felt lonely after her husband's death.

3 Measurement units وحدات قياس

- **pound** رطل

  1 kilogram = 2.2 pounds

- **mile** ميل

  1 mile = 1.6 km

- **foot** قدم

  1 foot = 30.48 cm / 12 inches

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My brother works .... computer company.
   a) for   b) at   c) on   d) by
2. Do you go to school .... ?
   a) lonely   b) alone   c) lone   d) line
3. Donkeys can carry up to 110 .... on their backs.
   a) foot   b) miles   c) pounds   d) meters



Lesson 4 SB P. 90

Lotfia El Nadi



Lotfia El Nadi was born in Cairo on October 29th, 1907. Her family was wealthy. Her father worked for the government. Her mother was a housewife who wanted her daughter(1) to have a good education.

All through her childhood, Lotfia was fascinated by the idea of flying(2). To h[e]r flying meant freedom and the possibility of a different life. She was a good student who was clever(3) and didn't give up easily.

While she was at school, El Nadi read an article(4) about a new flying scho[ol in] Cairo. From that moment, she knew what she wanted to do. She manage[d to] go to the director of Egypt Air(6), Kamal Elwi, to ask for help. He saw she was determined and he helped her. To pay for her lessons, she worked in an offi[ce].

She was the only woman in the class with 33 men. After just 67 days of less[ons] she became a pilot on September 27th, 1933. She was the first ever African Arab woman pilot, and she became famous around the world(7).

(1) ابنة (2) الطيران (3) ذكي (4) مقال (5) استطاعت (6) شركة مصر للطيران (7) حول العالم



Reading Lesson 4 WB P. 58

History of Flight Fact File

- In a 1783, the Montgolfier brothers in France made the first flight in a hot air balloon(1).
- In 1903, Orville and Wilbur Wright made the first flight in an airplane. It flew 120 feet(2) and the flight was 12 seconds long.
- In 1919, John Alcock and Arthur Brown were the first people to fly across th[e] Atlantic Ocean(3).
- In 1927, Charles Lindberg was the first person to fly across the Atlantic Oce[an] alone.
- In 1932, Amelia Earhart was the first woman to fly across the Atlantic Ocean alone.
- In 1971, the first passenger airplane(4) flew from New York to London with 3[?] passengers.

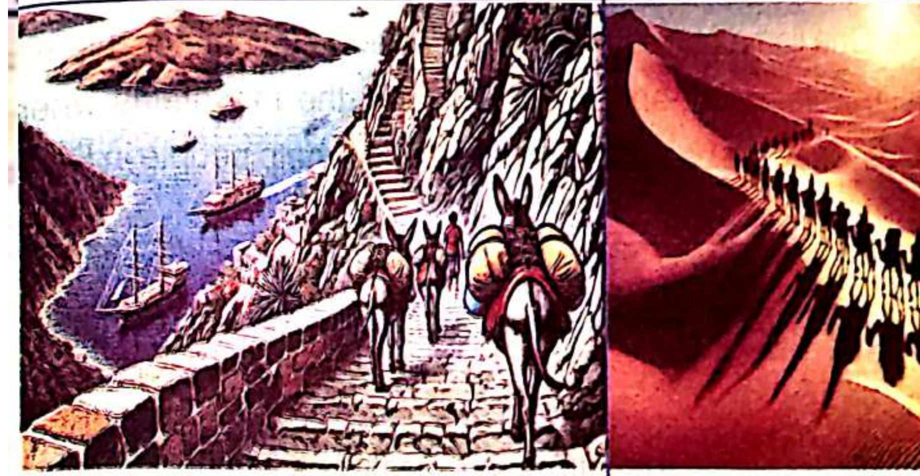
(1) منطاد (2) 120 قدم (3) المحيط الأطلسي (4) طائرة ركاب



Reading Lesson 4 SB P. 91

Join the animal caravan!

In some parts of the world, people have to rely on animals for transportation[1]. They use them to move heavy goods[2], people, and even their homes. These animals are a very important part of their way of life, and must be well taken care of.



Donkeys in Greece

On many of the Greek[3] islands, it is common to see towns built on mountainsides that have no roads. The people on these islands have been using donkeys to reach their towns for thousands of years, and you can still see these animals at work today carrying people and their things. Donkeys can carry up to 110 pounds on their backs[4]. They are friendly and don't get scared easily, so they're perfect for[5] this kind of work.

Camels in Morocco

Camels are often called the "ships of the desert" because they can carry people and heavy goods across large desert areas, such as those in Morocco[6]. They can carry up to 551 pounds on their backs and can travel up to 25 miles a day, even in very dry and hot climates[7], because they don't need to drink a lot of water.

(1) النقل (2) بضائع (3) يوناني (4) على ظهورهم (5) مثالي لـ (6) دولة المغرب (7) المناخ

Reading Lesson 4 WB P. 58

The people who live in the mountains of South America keep[1] llamas. They first kept llamas more than 7,000 years ago. Llamas can live high up in the mountains where the air isn't good because they have special blood[2]. Horses and donkeys can't live this high. Llamas have special feet which makes it easy for them to walk and in the mountains. One llama can carry between 70 and 100 pounds. can carry people, water, food, and goods across[4] the mountains there are no roads. They are beautiful animals that still help people in America today.

(1) يربي (2) دم (3) يتسلق (4) عبر



Reading Lesson 5 SB P. 92

July 6th,

Dear Grandma,

Hope you're well! We are having a great time on vacation. It is amazing The trip was quite difficult because there was a delay at the airport. We lost one of our bags, but we have it back now! We were worried for a

Yesterday was really exciting! It was a beautiful day, and we wanted something outside.

We went on a beautiful boat trip on a river. We listened to the birds we looked at the countryside. It was very peaceful. But then, while I taking a photograph of some birds, I felt some water on my feet. Lots water was coming into our boat, because there was a hole in the of it, so we had to get out and swim!

I am sending you a photograph of me at the start of our boat trip. I happy... and dry!

CU!

Love,

Courtney



Reading Lesson 5 WB P. 59

16 Park Street
Wells Town
WT4 90E
July 6th

Dear Aunty Kim and Uncle Eric,

I'm writing to tell you about my new school.

I'm really happy here. I've made lots of new friends and I really like the teachers. We live near the school, so I go to school on foot. I don't mind walking. It takes me about 30 minutes. Sometimes, I walk with my new friend, Harvey.

Yesterday was our school sports day. There were lots of races and different sports. I was running in the 400-meter race. While I was running, I saw Mom and Dad in the crowd! I didn't win. I came second, but I was really happy to get a prize.

I hope you can come and visit us in our new house because I miss you.

C U soon!

Arthur



Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lotfia El Nadi was the first African and Arab woman ....
   a) pilot b) teacher c) doctor d) captian
2. Her family was wealthy. The word "wealthy" means ....
   a) poor b) healthy c) rich d) needy
3. She was .... by the idea of flying.
   a) interested b) fascinated c) exited d) good

4. Farmers .... animals to help them in farm

a) take b) give c) keep d) make

5. .... are called the "ships of the desert"

a) Donkeys b) Deer c) Camels d) Cows

6. People use animals for .... in some parts of the world

a) flying b) translation c) transportation d) running

7. We must .... of our children

a) take part b) take care c) get d) make care

8. My dad works .... the government

a) in b) on c) for d) by

9. I always do my homework ....

a) lonely b) alone c) lone d) line

10. Animals can carry people and heavy ....

a) goods b) water c) cattle d) camels

11. Some towns are built on .... and have no roads

a) mountainsides b) street sides c) riversides d) deserts

12. How much did you pay .... that book? 50 pounds

a) to b) in c) by d) for

13. Donkeys can carry up to 110 .... on their backs

a) tons b) kilometers c) pounds d) centimeters

14. Camels can travel in very dry and hot ....

a) weather b) climates c) cities d) rivers

15. "Heavy" is the antonym of ....

a) terrible b) large c) light d) small



Writing

Informal letter
خطاب غير رسمي

An informal letter can sound as though you're talking to a friend.

قد تبدو الرسالة غير الرسمية وكأنك تتحدث إلى صديق.

Use informal language, for example, contractions and short forms.

استخدم لغة غير رسمية، على سبيل المثال، الاختصارات والأشكال القصيرة. مثل: (you're بدلًا من you are)

You can also begin sentences that express your feelings with a verb instead of a pronoun (Hope you're well! instead of I hope you're well!).

يمكنك أيضًا أن تبدأ الجمل التي تعبر عن مشاعرك بالفعل بدلًا من الضمير. (أتمنى أن تكون بخير، بدلًا من أنا أتمنى أن تكون بخير.)

How to write a letter:
كيف تكتب خطابًا:

- Write your address and the date on the right-hand side.

اكتب عنوانك وتاريخ اليوم على الجانب الأيمن.

- Begin the letter with Dear (name)

ابدأ الخطاب بكلمة (Dear) واسم المرسل إليه.

- Write one sentence explaining why you are writing.

اكتب جملة واحدة تشرح سبب الكتابة.

- Write two paragraphs.

اكتب فقرتين

- End the letter with C U soon! (Your name)

اختم الرسالة بعبارة (C U soon) وتعني (أراك قريبًا) ثم اكتب اسمك.

Model Letter

Address ⟶ 16 Park Street,
Cairo.
Date ⟶ July 6th

Dear **Name**..............,

Hope you're well! I'm having a great time on vacation!

(Paragraph 1) ....

(Paragraph 2) ....

C U soon ! ....

(Your name)



General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d

1. Camels are often called the " .... of the des
   a) trains   b) ships   c) cars   d) boats
2. Camels can carry heavy .... across the des
   a) trees   b) books   c) goods   d) wood
3. They can travel up to 25 .... a d
   a) miles   b) pounds   c) kilometers   d) kilograms
4. Camels don't need to .... a lot of wa
   a) eat   b) get   c) drink   d) carry

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the bo

first - interested - wealthy - fascinated - government

Lotfia El Nadi was born in Cairo on October 29th. Her family was 1) .... Her father worked for the 2) .... Her mother w a housewife. Lotfia was 3) .... by the idea of flying. She was a good and clever student. She became the 4) ....ever Afric and Arab woman pilot.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The people who live in the mountains of South America keep llamas They first kept llamas more than 7,000 years ago. Llamas can live hig up in the mountains where the air isn't good because they have specia blood. Horses and donkeys can't live this high. Llamas have special fee which makes it easy for them to walk and climb in the mountains. One llama can carry between 70 and 100 pounds. Llamas can carry people water, food, and goods across the mountains where there are no roads They are beautiful animals that still help people in South America today

Lessons (4 & 5)

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "special" is opposite to ....
   a) private b) good c) normal d) bad
2. It's not .... for llamas to walk and climb in the mountains.
   a) easy b) good c) nice d) hard

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where can llamas live? ....
4. How can llamas feet help them? ....
5. How much can one llama carry? ....
6. Why do you think llamas are still used today in the mountains? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Donkeys are friendly and don't .... scared easily.
   a) make b) get c) have d) take
2. Animals must be well .... care of.
   a) got b) made c) taken d) found
3. Some people .... animals for transportation.
   a) rely on b) built on c) take off d) make
4. My uncle works .... a big company for computers.
   a) to b) for c) with d) by
5. We .... for two hours.
   a) has walked b) have been walking c) walked d) walk
6. I have known my best friend .... two years.
   a) for b) since c) in d) by

5 Write an informal letter to your friend Omar about "A day on the beach". Your name is Ahmed and you live at 20 Orabi Street.

Writing Corner

Electric scooters

Electric scooters are almost as popular as cars, buses, and bikes, getting around busy streets in towns and cities. They don't have engines. Th have batteries powering an electric motor. They are easy to ride and pa They are good for the planet because they don't make the air dirty. Som people think that they can be dangerous. Also, they are expensive and are only for short trips.

Lotfia El Nadi

Lotfia El Nadi was born in Cairo in 1907. Her family was wealthy. H father worked for the government and her mother was a housewife. All through her childhood, Lotfia was fascinated by the idea of flying. She wa very determined and became the first African and Arab woman pilot. She became famous around the world.

An informal letter about vacation

15 High Stree
Giz
March 3

Dear Sara,

Hope you're well! I'm having a great time on vacation. It's amazing here

Yesterday was really exciting, we went on a boat tour on the river. We watched a lot of beautiful fish. In the evening, we went shopping and I bought some beautiful clothes. It's a great holiday!

CU!

Hagar

Dictation on Unit (8)

Lessons (1 & 2)

يتجول	…………………	مترجم	…………………
طائرة	…………………	العجلة	…………………
سكوتر	…………………	بطارية	…………………
سينما	…………………	إعلان	…………………
رصيف القطار	…………………	مسافرون	…………………
يخترع	…………………	سهل الركوب	…………………
محرك	…………………	صاخب - مزعج	…………………
كهربي	…………………	ينتظر	…………………

Lesson (3)

جولة	…………………	يحجز	…………………
فرد واحد	…………………	تكلفة	…………………
تاريخ اليوم	…………………	تفاصيل	…………………
تذاكر	…………………	رحلة طيران	…………………
خطط	…………………	يحترم	…………………
جزيرة	…………………	وسط المدينة	…………………
بالخطأ	…………………	يركب (مواصلات)	…………………

Lessons (4 & 5)

[illegible]	…………………	يعتمد على	…………………
[illegible]رمة	…………………	ثقب	…………………
[illegible]	…………………	حشد - جمهور	…………………
منا[illegible]	…………………	بضائع	…………………
عازم - مصمم	…………………	قافلة	…………………
منطقة صحراوية	…………………	النقل	…………………
يربي اللاما	…………………	ينال تعليم جيد	…………………
منطاد	…………………	بمفرده	…………………
رطل	…………………	مفتون - مبهور بـ	…………………

Review Based On Unit (8)

Vocabulary

transportation	وسائل النقل والمواصلات	motor	
airplane	طائرة	batteries	
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	announcement	
on foot	مشيًا على الأقدام	delay	
scooter	سكوتر	passengers	رون - ركاب
helicopter	مروحية	platform	القطار
streetcar	ترام	tour	
electric	كهربي	tickets	
engine	محرك	book (v)	
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	per person	رد الواحد
tourist	سائح	groups	موعات
plans	خطط	flight	ة طيران
wealthy	ثري	fascinated by	هور ب
pilot	طيار	education	
hot air balloon	منطاد	Atlantic Ocean	حيط الأطلسي
goods	بضائع	pound	

Grammar

"Present Perfect Continuous"

e.g. How long have you been playing tennis?

e.g. I have been reading this book since Tuesday.

e.g. She has been cleaning the house for two hours.

Speaking

Making suggestions	Vacation plans
- Would you like to ... ?	- I plan to ... .
- How / What abut ... ?	- I'd like to go ... .
- You could	- I really want to visit ... .

Test Based On Unit (8)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Hong Kong has .... islands.

a) 200 b) 362 c) 263 d) 500

There are beautiful .... with so much to see.

a) mountains b) beaches c) cities d) towns

You can see the city by ....

a) airplane b) car c) helicopter d) scooter

Hong Kong is one of the .... cities in the world.

a) greenest b) biggest c) smallest d) worst

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

My school isn't far, so I always go ....

a) by bus b) on foot c) by train d) by car

Electric scooters don't have ....

a) wheels b) tyres c) engines d) batteries

We went on a bus .... around the city.

a) tour b) tourist c) flight d) journey

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

for - making - by - since - housewife

We have been living in Alexandria 1).......................... 2015. I go to school .... bus. My mom doesn't go to work. She is a 3)..............., but she has ...een going to night school for the last two years because she is studying to ... a translator. We have been 4)........... a lot of friends since we moved here.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We are having a great time on vacation. It is amazing here! The trip ...as quite <u>difficult</u> because there was a delay at the airport. We also lost ...ne of our bags, but we have it back now! We were worried for a while! ...erday was really exciting! It was a beautiful day, and we wanted to do ...ing outside. We went on a beautiful boat trip on a river.

We listened to the birds and we looked at the countryside. It was peaceful. But then, while I was taking a photograph of some birds, I ... some water on my feet. Lots of water was coming into our boat, bec... there was a hole in the bottom of it, so we had to get out and swim! A... I was happy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "difficult" means ....
   a) easy b) hard c) simple d) fun
2. The countryside was very ....
   a) bad b) noisy c) peaceful d) cold

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What kind of trip did they go on? ....
4. What's the main idea of the text? ....
5. How did water come into the boat? ....
6. Do you think the writer enjoyed the vacation? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. How long have you .... at your hou...
   a) live b) be living c) living d) been liv...
2. He has been working .... the morn...
   a) yet b) for c) since d) now
3. I .... English for seven yea...
   a) am learning b) have been learning
   c) learnt d) learn

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brac...

1. We ....(work) for two ho...
2. I ....(read) this book since Tues...
3. They have been playing video games ....(for) ...
4. The streets are wet because it ....(ra...

7 Complete the following dialog.

: Hi, Talia. How was your vacation?

: Hi, Sara. 1) ....

: 2) .... ?

: I went to Rome.

: Did you go on a bus tour around the city?

: 3) ....

: 4) .... ?

: I stayed there for two weeks.

8 Write an informal letter to your friend Ziad about "Your birthday". Your name is Hady and you live at 30 Zahi Street, Giza.

....

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "He is not my brother! He's a thief and I am the king!" a- the servant
2. "I will bring you your clothes." b- Hugo
3. "Pretend I'm your brother." c- Edward

Answer the following questions:

1. How many servants were there to dress the king?

....

2. Why couldn't Tom eat very much that evening?

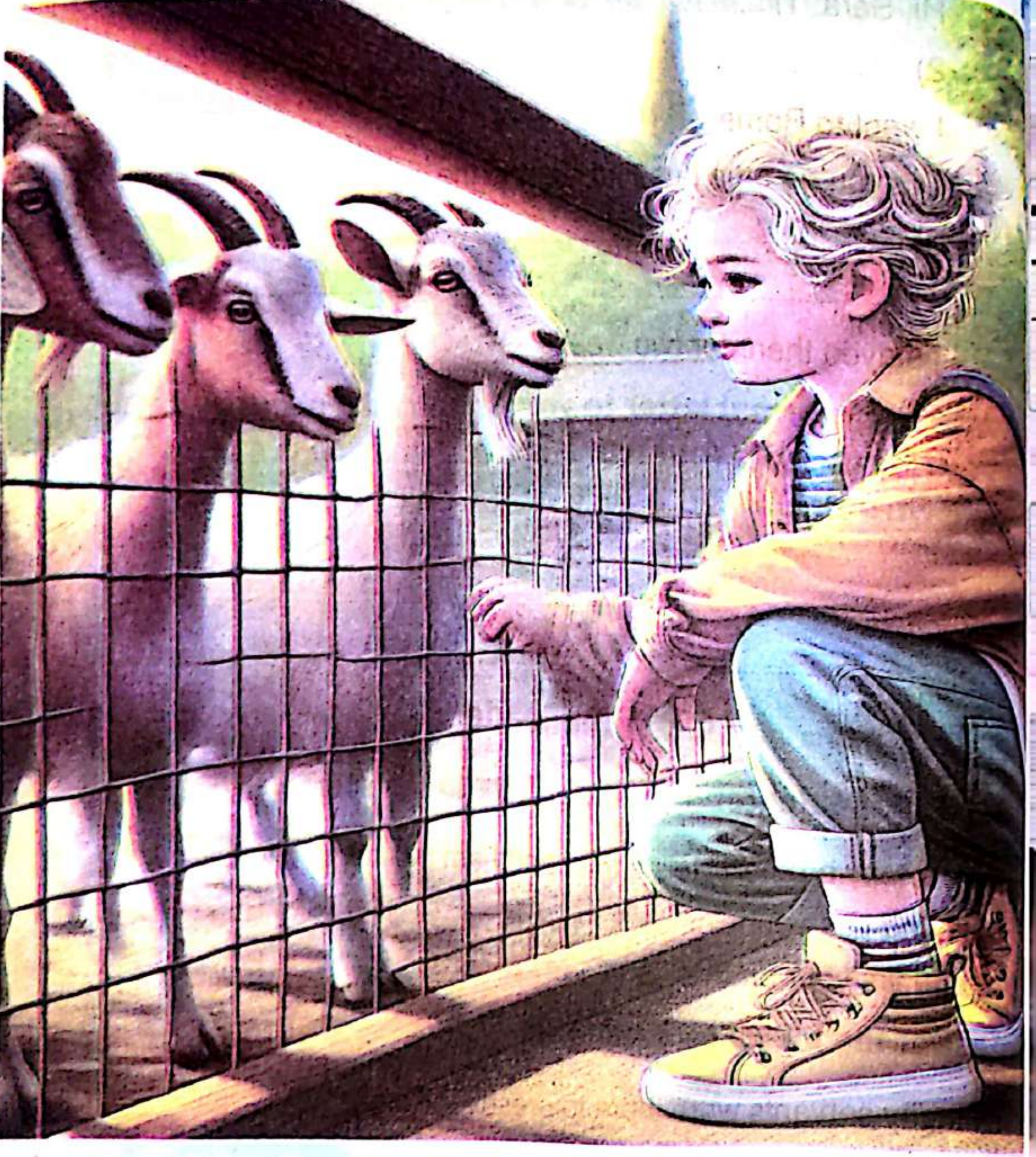
....

3. Where did the judge put Miles?

....

Unit 9

Now you see us!



Unit Objectives

Reading	a news report about elephants; an article about animal researchers
Listening	a news report about saving wildlife
Speaking	explain a point of view
Writing	a for-and-against essay
Language	defining relative clauses

Lessons (1&2)

- Vocabulary and speaking
- Reading
- Grammar
- Listening

Animals — حيوانات

elephant	فيل	flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو	snow leopard	نمر الثلوج
whale	حوت	eagle	نسر	fox	ثعلب
tiger	نمر	snake	ثعبان	monkey	قرد
panda	دب الباندا	penguin	البطريق		

Place / Home — الموطن

forest	غابة	mountain	جبل	desert	صحراء
jungle	أدغال	sea	بحر		

Extra vocabulary — مفردات إضافية

behavior	سلوك	purr (ed) (v)	يخرخر (صوت القطة)	wild animals	حيوانات برية
behave	يتصرف	ethologist	عالم سلوك الحيوان	tame (d) (v)	يروض
domestic	منزلي / أليف	researcher	باحث	blind	أعمى
realize (d)	يدرك	display	يُظهر	nature	طبيعة
develop (ed)	يطور	wildlife	الحياة البرية	wood	خشب
climate change	التغير المناخي	member	عضو (في الأسرة)	research (n)	بحث
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن	rescue (d)	ينقذ	train (ed)	يدرب

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
cut down	يقطع	cut down	cut down
hurt	يؤذي / يضر	hurt	hurt

Definitions

behavior (n)	the way someone says or does things
to behave (v)	to do or say things in a certain way
ethologist	a person who studies animal behavior ي الحيوان
jungle	a forest in a tropical country where lots of trees and plants grow very close together
desert	a large area of land covered with sand and is very hot and
rescue (v)	to save someone or something from something difficult or dangerous that is happening
wild animal	an animal that lives in nature and hasn't been tamed by humans بري

Collocations ت لفظية

train	animals	يدرب الحيوانات	**get**	angry	
live	in the forest	يعيش في الغابة	**spend**	time	وق
	in large groups	يعيش في مجموعات كبيرة			

Important Expressions

love each other	يحب بعضهم البعض	family members	الأسرة
cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار	(be) like	
human activity	نشاط بشري	Wildlife Rescue	ـة "إنقاذ الحياة البرية"
All That Breathes	مؤسسة "كل ما يتنفس"	caring for the planet	ـة بالكوكب
as a group	كمجموعة		

Important Prepositions جر هامة

share with	يتشارك مع	in large groups	جموعات كبيرة
in danger	في خطر	angry with	ب من

ynonyms & Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة		Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
ild	بري - متوحش	fierce		tame	أليف
everal	عديد	many		few - one	قليل - واحد
se	يخسر	waste		win	يفوز

Suffixes
اللواحق

	Function	Example			
-ist	تعطي الاسم (الوظيفة)	ethology	علم السلوك الحيواني	ethologist	عالم السلوك الحيواني
		science	علوم	scientist	عالم
-er	تعطي الاسم من الفعل	research	يبحث	researcher	باحث
-ous	تكون الصفة من الاسم	danger	خطر	dangerous	خطير

Language Notes

surprising - surprised

- **surprising (adj.)** مدهش

الصفة التي تنتهي بـ (ing) تصف السبب في الشعور.

e.g. Wild animals show many surprising behaviors.

- **surprised (adj.)** مندهش

الصفة التي تنتهي بـ (ed) تصف الشعور.

e.g. I was surprised when I won the first prize.

exciting	⟷	exited
interesting	⟷	interested
boring	⟷	bored

Reading Lesson 1 SB P. 95

Elephant behavior



An ethologist is a person who studies animal behavior(1). We've always known that we can train(2) pets and domestic animals to behave in certain(3) ways. For example we can train animals to help blind people move around(4). We can also guess how pets are feeling. For example, we believe that when cats are happy, they purr

However, ethologists have also realized just how amazing wild anin are. A wild animal is one that lives in nature and has not been tame humans(6). Wild animals show many surprising behaviors. Some of most amazing wild animals are elephants.

Researchers have seen several types of behavior which elephants sh with humans. For example, elephants look after(7) each other when they ill. Elephants feel sad when other elephants die and sometimes they sad for many months. Elephants will work together as a group to resc family members that are in danger and they don't get angry with each ot as often as other wild animals do. Elephants seem to love each other(9) look after each other in ways that we have not understood before.

While some people do not agree that elephant behavior is like human behavior, the research shows(10) us that we don't know everything ab animals and that we still have a lot to learn.

(1)	سلوك	(2)	يدرب	(3)	معينة	(4)	يتجول	(5)	يخرخر
(6)	البشر	(7)	يعتني بـ	(8)	ينقذ	(9)	بعضهم البعض	(10)	يبين

Reading Skill

Paragraphs: فقرات

Paragraphs have an important job. When writers want to tell us about a new idea, they start a new paragraph.

الفقرات لها وظيفة هامة. عندما يرغب الكُتّاب في إخبارنا بفكرة جديدة، يبدأون فقرة جديدة.

Remember, when you answer questions about a text, the questions are usually in the same order as the text. This means that you will probably find the answer to question 1 in paragraph 1 of the text.

تذكّر أنه عند الإجابة عن أسئلة حول نص معين، تكون الأسئلة عادةً بنفس ترتيب النص. هذا يعني أنك ستجد على الأرجح إجابة السؤال الأول في الفقرة الأولى من النص.

Practice:

1. **What is the main idea of the report?**
   a) Humans have taught elephants how to behave.
   b) Pets have now started to behave like elephants.
   c) Elephants and humans share some types of behavior.

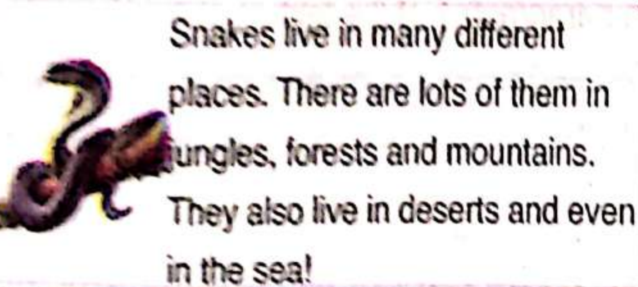
2. **Read the report again. Then answer the questions.**
   a) What is one way an animal can be trained to help humans?
   ....
   b) What behavior do cats display that shows they are happy?
   ....
   c) Name two examples of elephants' behavior from the report.
   ....
   d) How do elephants seem to feel about each other?
   ....
   e) Does everyone agree that human and elephant behavior are alike?
   ....

Reading Lesson 1 WB P. 61

Tigers live in lots of places. Some of these places include jungles, mountains and forests.



Monkeys live in many different places, too. Jungles, forests, mountains and deserts. They don't live in the sea!



Snakes live in many different places. There are lots of them in jungles, forests and mountains. They also live in deserts and even in the sea!



Whales live in the sea!



Elephants often live in forests and deserts.

Reading Lesson 2 SB P. 96



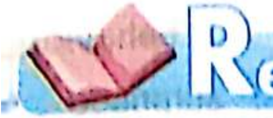
This is an animal that lives in China. It is black and white. People who needed wood to build their homes came to the forest and the mountains where this animal lives. They cut down[1] the trees which this animal eats. But now, these people understand[2] that the animals need their homes and their food.
Which animal is this?





This is a bird which always lives near the sea. It can swim and it can also walk. It doesn't walk very well because it has legs which are really short. It likes to eat fish. Climate change[3] is this animal's biggest problem. Children who have watched the movie Happy Feet know a lot about this animal.
Which animal is this?

(1) (2) يقطع (3) يفهم التغيير المناخي



Reading Lesson 2 WB P. 62



Snakes under the ground

Scientists are excited because they think they have found three new types[1] of snake. These are snakes which live in South America.

In 2021, scientists who were studying animals in Ecuador[2] stayed in a small town for the night. The people who gave them food told them about snakes which were living between rocks[3] and under the ground. The scientists went to find out[4] more. They found three new types of small snake living in these quiet[5] places. The scientists who found the snakes gave them new scientific[6] names, and they wrote articles which have lots of information about these amazing animals!

(1)	أنواع	(2)	دولة الإكوادور	(3)	صخور
(4)	يكتشف	(5)	هادئ	(6)	علمي

Exercises on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A/An .... is a person who studies animal behavior.
   a) teacher b) doctor c) ethologist d) biologist
2. Elephants .... several types of behavior with humans.
   a) take b) share c) have d) make
3. Animals can be .... to help people.
   a) killed b) learnt c) trained d) spoken
4. When cats are happy, they ....
   a) talk b) hurt c) purr d) jump
5. A .... animal is one that lives in nature and hasn't been tamed by humans.
   a) big b) pet c) wild d) mild

6. Wild animals show many .... beha
   a) amazed   b) surprising   c) interested   d) surprise
7. Tigers live in ....
   a) jungles   b) seas   c) rivers   d) lakes
8. Elephants live in .... groups and love each o
   a) small   b) young   c) large   d) little
9. The .... lives in China, and it's black and w
   a) tiger   b) whale   c) panda   d) flamingo
10. The .... can swim and w
    a) bird   b) snake   c) monkey   d) penguin
11. People .... trees that animals
    a) cut down   b) cut out   c) get by   d) put down
12. "Wild" is the antonym of ....
    a) fierce   b) rich   c) tame   d) fame
13. When I don't do my homework, my teacher .... ang
    a) takes   b) puts   c) gets   d) makes
14. Cats and dogs are called ....
    a) insects   b) pets   c) reptiles   d) bats
15. Some animals, like lions can be .... by huma
    a) learnt   b) tamed   c) given   d) eaten
16. There was a big fire in a house, but the .... saved peop
    a) rescuers   b) painters   c) swimmers   d) builders
17. .... is the way someone says or does thing
    a) Action   b) Behavior   c) Acting   d) Being
18. Delhi is the biggest city in ....
    a) Egypt   b) France   c) India   d) Asia
19. Penguins have .... legs, so they don't walk very we
    a) big   b) large   c) short   d) small



Grammar

Defining Relative clauses

جمل الوصل المعرفة

Usage الاستخدام

We use relative clauses to give information about a person, a thing or

نستخدم جمل الوصل لإعطاء معلومات عن شخص أو شيء أو حيوان.

(هذه المعلومات يحتاج إليها الناس لفهم النص.)

We start a defining relative clause right after we name the person, thing or animal that we want to give more information about.

نبدأ جملة الوصل المعرفة بعد اسم الشخص أو الشيء أو الحيوان الذي نريد أن نقدم عنه معلومات أكثر.

e.g. The person who ..... **e.g.** The animal that .....

Relative Pronouns

ضمائر الوصل

1) who / that (for people) الذي / التي (للأشخاص)

e.g. Researchers who / that are studying elephants say that elephants have interesting types of behavior.

e.g. The boy who / that sits next to me in class is really good at football.

2) which / that (for things or animals) الذي / التي (للأشياء أو الحيوانات)

e.g. The tiger is an animal which / that lives in forests or jungles.

e.g. This is the book which / that my brother has just read.

Remember تذكر:

That is more common in informal speech.

كلمة That أكثر شيوعًا واستخدامًا في الكلام غير الرسمي.

e.g. This is the film that I told you about.

e.g. This woman that lives next door is a vet.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. An ethologist is a person .... studies animal beh
   a) who b) which c) why d) where
2. Elephants are animals .... seem to love each o
   a) who b) which c) what d) when
3. People .... study animals have to spend a lot of time out
   a) which b) where c) who d) whose
4. Whales are animals .... live in large family gro
   a) who b) that c) why d) whom
5. Animals .... live near the sea often eat f
   a) who b) where c) which d) when
6. Tom lives in a town .... is very close to the mounta
   a) when b) who c) that d) where
7. The person .... owns this boat must be very ri
   a) which b) that c) whom d) whose
8. The dish .... I ordered was delicio
   a) which b) who c) whose d) why
9. That is the doctor .... helped me at the hospi
   a) which b) where c) what d) who
10. This was the best film .... I've ever see
    a) who b) that c) when d) whom
11. The penguin has legs .... are really sho
    a) when b) who c) which d) where

12. A wild animal is one .... lives in nature.
    a) who   b) that   c) when   d) whose
13. The boy .... won the prize is my cousin.
    a) which   b) when   c) who   d) whom
14. I don't like zoos .... don't look after their animals.
    a) who   b) which   c) when   d) whose
15. The girl .... is wearing a blue skirt is my sister.
    a) who   b) which   c) when   d) whose
16. A carpenter is someone .... makes things from wood.
    a) which   b) who   c) where   d) whom
17. The kettle .... my dad bought was broken.
    a) who   b) when   c) that   d) whose

2 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Plants .... (who) grow in deserts need a lot of water.
2. Scientists .... (which) were studying animals stayed in a tent.
3. That is the story .... (who) my brother wrote.
4. I met the man .... (which) got the gold medal.
5. The penguin is an animal .... (this) lives near the sea.
6. Children .... (which) watched the movie "Happy Feet" knew a lot about the penguins.
7. The boy .... (when) bullied other children was punished.
8. We bought a TV .... (this) was quite expensive.
9. The animal .... (who) has thick fur is mine.
10. The teacher .... (which) helped me was honored.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d

1. The .... is a bird that always lives near the ...
   a) tiger b) snake c) penguin d) monkey
2. It had really ....
   a) short b) long c) big d) small
3. Penguins can .... and ...
   a) jump b) run c) swim d) crawl
4. The biggest problem for the penguin is ....
   a) climate change b) trees c) rubbish d) smoke

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box

rescue - behavior - Researchers - for - after

Elephants are amazing wild animals. 1) .... have seen seve... types of 2) .... which elephants share with humans. For examp... elephants look 3)..................... each other when they are ill. They wor... together as a group to 4)..................... family members that are in danger a... they don't get angry with each other.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Scientists are excited because they think they have found three ne... types of snakes. These are snakes which live in South America. In 2021 scientists who were studying animals in Ecuador stayed in a small town fo... the night. The people who gave them food told them about snakes whic... were living between rocks and under the ground. The scientists went t... find out more. They found three new types of small snakes living in thes... quiet places. The scientists who found the snakes gave them new scientific names, and they wrote articles which have lots of informatio... about these amazing animals!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   a) people b) snakes c) scientists d) food
2. The underlined word "quiet" is the opposite of ....
   a) noisy b) peaceful c) large d) nice

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How many new types of snakes have scientist found? ....
4. What's the main idea of the text? ....
5. Where did the scientists stay while studying the animals? ....
6. What do you think of snakes? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Trees that grow in .... are usually very tall and thick.
   a) jungles b) deserts c) seas d) farms
2. We can train pets and .... animals to behave in certain ways.
   a) wild b) dangerous c) domestic d) fierce
3. My dad doesn't .... angry with me.
   a) come b) go c) get d) give
4. Whales are animals .... live in large groups.
   a) who b) which c) when d) where
5. The player .... scored the most goals got the prize.
   a) who b) which c) whom d) why
6. This is the best story .... I've ever read.
   a) when b) that c) who d) where

5 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. The woman .... (this) taught me French lives in Paris.
2. This is the book .... (who) I told you about.
3. Tom is the boy .... (which) sends me emails every day.
4. Students .... (which) got full mark will be honored.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Tigers

Lesson (3)

• Reading • Speaking
• Pronunciation

Key vocabulary

dolphin	دولفين	essential	ضروري - أساسي	seal
machine	آلة	narwhal	كركدن البحر "نوع من الحيتان"	toad
sea lion	أسد البحر	carrier pigeons	الحمام الزاجل	

Extra vocabulary

scientists	علماء	temperature	درجة الحرارة	oceans
contact (ed)	يتصل	human beings	البشر	carry (ied)
salt	ملح	glad	مسرور	check (ed)
pharmacist	صيدلي	afraid	خائف - يخشى أن	weather
US Navy Marine Mammal Program			ـيات البحرية التابع للبحرية الأمريكية	

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P	Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn	put	يضع	put	put
fly	يطير	flew	flown	send	يرسل	sent	sen

Collocations

get	information	يحصل على معلومات	send	letters
get	lost	يضل الطريق - يتوه	send	emails
do	a project	يقوم بمشروع	send	a message

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym
deep	عميق	________		shallow
essential	ضروري	important		unnecessary
clever	ذكي	smart		stupid
glad	سعيد	happy		sad

Suffixes اللواحق

	Function	Example			
-ous	تكون الصفة من الاسم	fame	شهرة	famous	مشهور
		danger	خطر	dangerous	خطير
-ist	تعطي اسم الوظيفة	pharmacy	صيدلية	pharmacist	صيدلي
		science	علوم	scientist	عالم

Important Expressions تعبيرات هامة

send back	يعيد إرسال	collect information	يجمع معلومات
faraway	بعيد	find their way home	يجدون طريقهم إلى المنزل
a little bit longer	أطول قليلًا	I see what you mean.	أفهم ما تعنيه
point of view	وجهة نظر - رأي	have a debate	يجري مناقشة

Important Prepositions حروف جر هامة

learn about	يتعلم عن	covered in	مغطى بـ
on the road	على الطريق	in danger	في خطر
useful for	مفيد لـ	go across	يعبر

Language Notes

1 too + adj. + to + inf. جدًا لدرجة لا

e.g. It is too dangerous for human beings to go there.

2 As well as + v-ing بالإضافة إلى

e.g. As well as knowing where to go, the birds can fly a long way very quickly.

3 a few / a little

- **a few +** اسم جمع قليل العدد

e.g. We stay in Alexandria for a few days a year.

- **a little +** اسم لا يعد قليل الكمية

e.g. There is a little water in the glass.



Lesson 3 SB P. 98

Animal researchers

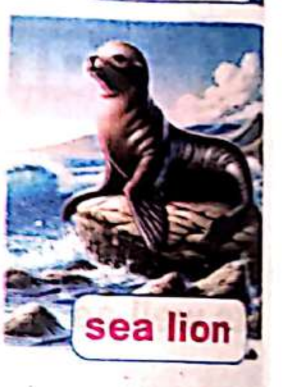


Scientists study science and the world around us. They do important projects to learn more about nature(1) ... how it behaves and how it is changing(2). Around 70% of the whole world is covered in water. We need to study the oceans and seas to learn what is happening with our weather(3) and climate change. But there are areas of the sea which are so deep(4) that it is too difficult or too dangerous for human beings to get there(5). So, animals are helping us.

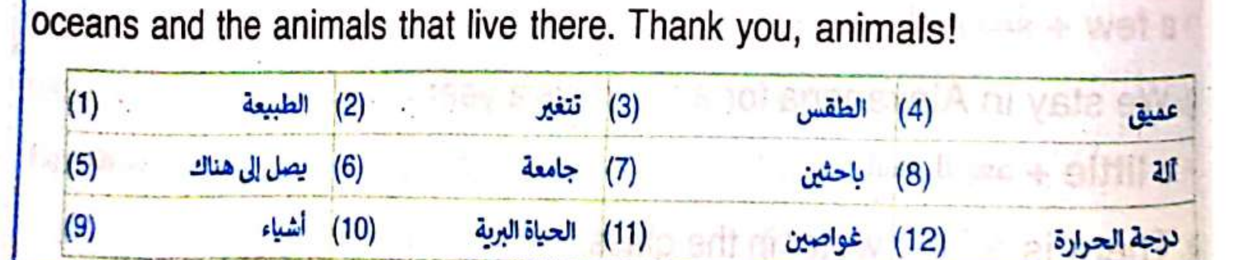


At the University(6) of Santa Cruz in California, scientists are using sea lions and seals as researchers(7)! The animals wear a small machine which shows how much salt is in the water and sends this information back to the scientists. At the U.S. Navy Marine Mammal Program in San Diego in California, scientists are using dolphins as researchers too! The dolphins wear a small machine(8) with a camera that helps them find dangerous objects(9) that can hurt humans and wildlife(10).





Dolphins can do this because they can swim to places that are too difficult or dangerous for divers(11). The machines also collect information that helps scientists study different ocean environments. And a type of whale, called a narwhal, is helping scientists at the University of Washington. The narwhals wear a machine which can check the temperature(12) 1 mile under the water! The machines help us to get essential information about the sea, and they don't hurt these animals. The information these animals collect helps scientists find new ways to protect t oceans and the animals that live there. Thank you, animals!



(1)	الطبيعة	(2)	تتغير	(3)	الطقس	(4)	عميق
(5)	يصل إلى هناك	(6)	جامعة	(7)	باحثين	(8)	آلة
(9)	أشياء	(10)	الحياة البرية	(11)	غواصين	(12)	درجة الحرارة



Reading Skill

Dealing with Wh- questions: التعامل مع الأسئلة بكلمة استفهام:

- Wh- questions, such as Who, When, Where, etc., are each asking for different types of information.

الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ "Wh-" مثل: من (Who)، متى (When)، أين (Where)، إلخ، يطلب كل منها نوعًا مختلفًا من المعلومات.

For example:

the answer to Who? is always a person or people.

على سبيل المثال: تكون إجابة سؤال "من؟ (Who?)" دائمًا شخصًا أو مجموعة من الأشخاص.

the answer to When? is always a date or time.

تكون إجابة سؤال "متى؟ (When?)" دائمًا تاريخًا أو وقتًا.

the answer to Where? is always a place. تكون إجابة سؤال "أين؟ (Where?)" دائمًا مكانًا.

- Practice underlining the Wh- question word in questions — this will help you to find the information you need more quickly in the text.

قم بالتدرب على وضع خط تحت كلمة الاستفهام التي تبدأ بـ "Wh-" في الأسئلة، سيساعدك هذا على العثور على المعلومات التي تحتاجها بسرعة أكبر في النص.

- Match questions a-f about the article with answers 1-8. There are two extra answers.

a) What do we call people who study nature and the world? ( )
b) What is 70% of the world covered in? ( )
c) What is happening in the world that the oceans and seas can tell us about? ( )
d) Why are some places difficult or dangerous for people to get to? ( )
e) What are sea lions and seals helping to check in the sea? ( )
f) What are narwhal whales helping to check in the sea? ( )

1) temperature
2) animals
3) scientists
4) salt
5) water
6) they are too deep
7) machines
8) climate change

Speaking Lesson 3 WB P. 63

Carrier pigeons



There are lots of ways to contact[1] people today – we can send letters, emails, or a message on a smartphone[2]. But did you know that people have used birds to send messages? Carrier pigeons were very useful for humans because they could find their way home from places that were faraway[3].

We don't really understand[4] how, but these clever birds can travel fro a new place back to their home, and not get lost. People put small messages on the bird's leg, for people at home to read. In the past, lot important messages traveled this way. Pigeons carried messages in Ancient Egypt[5], Ancient China, and Rome, and in more modern times, t

As well as[6] knowing where to go, the birds can fly a long way very quickly. They can fly over 700 miles in one day, at about 37 miles an ho In 1850, a news company[7] used carrier pigeons to carry information fr Germany to Belgium, and the birds traveled 75 miles in two hours[8]. Th was faster than the train!

(1)	يتصل	(2)	هاتف ذكي	(3)	بعيد	(4)	يفهم
(5)	مصر القديمة	(6)	بالإضافة إلى	(7)	شركة أخبار	(8)	في ساعتين

Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. What do carrier pigeons carry?

 ....

2. Where do people put the messages on the bird?

 ....

3. How far can a carrier pigeon fly in a day?

 ....

Lesson (3)

- Lesson 3 WB P. 64

Lucy : I've just read an article[1] about people who decided to close a road so toads could go across[2] it safely.

Clare : Do you mean[3] they stopped cars from going on the road?

Lucy : Yes, that's right. In some places, toads are in danger because they always go back[4] to the same places. At one time of year, they go across roads that they have crossed for years. Now that roads are busier[5], it can be dangerous. I think it's a good idea.

Clare : **I'm afraid I don't understand**, Lucy. Why do you think that's a good idea? If roads are closed, it makes life difficult for people who need to travel.

Lucy : Well, it's only for a few days[6] a year. People can choose to go a different way which is a little bit longer, but toads can't.

Clare : **I like what you said** about people being able to choose. However, **I believe** it's better if we don't change the way we live to protect[7] animals.

Lucy : Sorry, why do you think that?

Clare : **I'm glad you asked me that.** Well, what about if somebody has to go to the hospital, or school, or a pharmacist[8]? If the road is closed, it's a problem

Lucy : I see what you mean[9], and of course that's important, but **I prefer to** think that we can protect the toads if we just add a few minutes to our trips.

(1)	مقالة	(2)	يعبر	(3)	هل تعني
(4)	يرجع	(5)	أكثر ازدحاما	(6)	أيام قليلة
(7)	يحمي	(8)	صيدلي	(9)	أفهم ما تعنيه



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... are people who study science and the world aroun
   a) Doctors b) Scientists c) Actors d) Drivers
2. Animals can .... information that helps scien
   a) look b) give c) collect d) learn
3. Some areas of the sea are so ....
   a) high b) deep c) fast d) quick
4. It's too .... for human beings to go into volcano
   a) safe b) cold c) dangerous d) interested
5. Around 70% of the whole world is .... in wa
   a) made b) covered c) down d) done
6. The important project has helped us get .... information about the se
   a) essential b) unnecessary c) bad d) unlikely
7. We are studying these animals closely to see how they ....
   a) play b) eat c) behave d) run
8. The .... are collecting information about the climate and how it is changin
   a) swimmers b) scientists c) pilots d) doctors
9. The narwhal wears a .... which can check the temperature of the wat
   a) camera b) shirt c) machine d) engine
10. The animals showed some unusual types of ....
    a) behavior b) behave c) sport d) favor
11. Carrier .... were used to send message
    a) hens b) eagles c) birds d) pigeons
12. There are .... books left on the tab
    a) a little b) a few c) much d) any

13. Some animals are in .... of losing their habitat.

a) danger b) dangerous c) endanger d) dangred

14. I'm .... I don't understand.

a) glad b) happy c) afraid d) excited

15. Yesterday, we .... a debate about how to protect animals.

a) did b) gave c) had d) were

16. The word "deep" is the antonym of ....

a) cold b) shallow c) far d) wide

17. People use lots of ways to .... each other today.

a) waves b) contact c) connect d) correct

18. The math problem was .... difficult to answer.

a) too b) very c) so d) that

Speaking Skills

Explaining a point of view. شرح وجهة نظر

عند مناقشة موضوع وإبداء وجهة نظر فيه والتعبير عن فهم أو عدم فهم الموضوع نستخدم هذه التعبيرات

Expressing understanding or not الفهم أو عدم الفهم	Expressing a point of view شرح وجهة نظر
- Do you mean ....? هل تقصد ....؟	- I believe .... . أعتقد أن ....
- I'm afraid I don't understand. أخشى أنني لم أفهم.	- I prefer to .... . أفضل أن ....
- I like what you said; However, ... أعجبني ما تقول، ومع ذلك	- I'm glad you asked me that. Well, ... أنا سعيد أنك سألتني عن هذا. حسنًا، ....
- Yes, that's right. نعم، هذا صحيح	- I think it's a good idea. أعتقد إنها فكرة جيدة.
- I see what you mean. أفهم ما تعنيه.	

Having a debate: مناقشة

When we have a debate, it's very important to be polite to the other person or team. Use words and phrases like Thanks, Sorry, and I'm afraid.

نجري مناقشة، من المهم جدًا أن نكون مهذبين مع الشخص أو الفريق الآخر. استخدم كلمات وعبارات مثل شكرًا،

، واخشى أن.

Examples:

A: They decided to close the road so toads could go across it safely.

B: Do you mean they stopped cars from going on the road?

A: Yes, that's right.

B: I like what you said. However, I believe it's better if we find another way to protect the toads.

A: I see what you mean.

Pronunciation

The letter "h" sound

رف "h" ينطق مثل حرف "هـ" في اللغة العربية، ويكون صامتًا (silent) في بعض الكلمات.

Pronounced "h"	Slient "h"
have	honest
hospital	school
however	what
human	why
happy	whale
hard	ache
hear	character

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog.

Sarah : Hi, Lucy. What are you doing?
Lucy : Hi, Sara. 1) ....
Sarah : 2) ....?
Lucy : The article is about closing the road for toads to cross safely.
Sarah : Do you mean they stopped cars from going on the road?
Lucy : Yes, 3) ....
Sarah : 4) ....?
Lucy : Of course, you can read it.
Sarah : Thanks.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

very – machine – researchers – wildlife – too

Scientists are using dolphins as 1) .... The dolphins wear a small 2) .... with a camera that helps them find dangerous objects that can hurt humans and 3) .... Dolphins can do this because they can swim to places that are 4)...................... difficult or dangerous for divers.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Scientists study science and the world around us. They do important projects to learn more about nature, how it behaves and how it is changing. Around 70% of the whole world is covered in water. We need to study the <u>oceans</u> and seas to learn what is happening with our weather and climate change. But there are areas of the sea which are so deep that it is too difficult or too **dangerous** for human beings to get there. So, animals are helping us.

At the University of Santa Cruz in California, scientists are using sea lions and seals as researchers! The animals wear a small machine which shows how much salt is in the water and sends this information back to the scientists.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "oceans" means ....
   a) small seas b) big rivers c) big seas d) big lakes

2. The word "dangerous" is a/an ....

a) noun b) adjective c) verb d) adverb

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How do scientists help us? ....

4. What is 70% of the world covered in? ....

5. Do you think animals are helping us? ....

6. Name the animals mentioned in the text. ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Pollution causes .... It's too ba

a) weather change b) climate change c) sea level d) fires

2. It was raining, and I fell down. I was .... in mu

a) made b) got c) covered d) discovere

3. Some students show some bad .... at schoo

a) behavior b) behave c) classes d) essential

4. We must protect the animals that are ....

a) endanger b) in danger c) dangerous d) danger

5. The word "glad" is the synonym of ....

a) sad b) bored c) happy d) boring

6. Carrier pigeons can find their way home from places .... are far awa

a) who b) that c) where d) whom

7. There are areas of the sea .... are so dee

a) which b) who c) when d) what

8. The man .... saved the boy is very brave

a) this b) which c) who d) where

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Animal helpers

Lessons (4&5)

• CLIL • Culture • Writing

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

tiny	صغير جدًا	research	بحث - يبحث	patterns	أنماط - نقوش - زخارف
space	مساحة - مكان	skilled	ماهر	cave painting	فن الرسم في الكهوف
exist	يوجد	sculpture	تمثال منحوت	ancient	قديم
serious	شديد - خطير	drawings	رسومات	paint	دهان - طلاء

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

paintbrush	فرشاة تلوين	artist	فنان - رسام	various	مختلف
life - lives	حياة - حيوات	3D	ثلاثي الأبعاد	understanding	فهم
metals	معادن	bright	لامع	blobfish	السمكة المنتفخة
rhino	وحيد القرن	koala	دب الكوالا	destroy (ed)	يدمر
southeast	جنوب شرق	respect	يحترم	conservationist	محافظ على البيئة
create (d)	ينشئ	bat	خفاش	condor	طائر الكوندور

Definitions تعريفات

tiny	very, very small	صغير جدًا
exist	to be in the world, to live	يوجد
patterns	designs of lines, shapes, and colors	أنماط - زخارف
skilled	very good at something	ماهر
ancient	very, very old	قديم جدًا
sculpture	a 3D model of something	تمثال منحوت

Important Prepositions حروف جر هامة

on the walls	على الجدران	In my opinion	في رأيي
important to	هام بالنسبة لـ	share with	يتشارك مع
worry about	يقلق بشأن	because of	بسبب
give money for	يعطي مالًا من أجل	in danger	في خطر

Important Expressions مة

make art	يصنع الفن	bits of stones	ن الحجارة
tell stories	يحكي قصصًا	look like	(شكله)
That's horrible	هذا فظيع	too many + اسم جمع	نًا
(are) almost gone	اختفت تقريبًا	conservation program	ج الحماية
it seems to me that ...	يبدو لي أن ...	not ... any more	ـ

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
draw	يرسم	drew	drown
make	يصنع	made	made
learn	يتعلم	learnt	learnt

Synonyms & Antonyms ردفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	لضاد
various	مختلف	different		similar	شابه
special	خاص - مميز	particular		common	ئع
terrible	فظيع	very bad - awful		wonderful	ع
cute	جميل - جذاب	charming - sweet		ugly	ح
serious	شديد - خطير	severe		easy	سيط - سهل

Suffixes واحق

	Function	Example			
-ation	تكون الاسم من الفعل	conserve	يحافظ	conservation	لمحافظة - الحماية
-al	تكون الصفة من الاسم	nature	طبيعة	natural	يعي
-ful		care	رعاية	careful	رص



Reading Lesson 4 SB P. 100



Cave paintings

Long before anyone could write, people were making art. These people lived in caves, and they drew paintings on the walls of their homes. So we call this art cave painting. In Europe[1], there are cave paintings in France, Spain, Italy, Portugal, and Germany. There are also cave paintings in parts of Australia and countries in Africa. The oldest example of cave painting we know of is in the Blombos Caves[2] in South Africa and it was painted over 70,000 years ago.

Back then, there weren't any paintbrushes, so the artists used small, thin bones[3] to paint their pictures. They didn't have paint, so they mixed various things together, including[4] plants, animal blood, and tiny bits of stone. Black and red were the main colors they made. Sometimes they drew interesting patterns of circles and squares[5]. Often, they painted animals.

These amazing drawings tell us how important animals were to humans[6] in the past. They also show us that art was an important part of these people's lives. Perhaps they used the pictures to tell stories? We don't know. Some of these artists were very skilled. The details[7] in the pictures show a great understanding of the animals and their behavior. Some of the animals in cave paintings don't exist anymore, so we can learn a lot from this ancient art. We can learn which animals lived in that region[8] and what they looked like. The paintings give scientists important information about the animals that lived at that time.

(1)	أوروبا	(2)	كهوف بلومبوس	(3)	عظام رقيقة	(4)	يشمل
(5)	مربعات	(6)	البشر	(7)	تفاصيل	(8)	منطقة

Reading Lesson 4 WB P. 65

Animals in art



A sculpture is a 3D model[1] of something. It can be big or small. People have made sculptures of animals for thousands of years. They have used stone[2] and expensive metals[3] like gold to make sculptures of animals that were important to them. One of the oldest animal sculptu[res] is 40,000 years old!

People still make sculptures of animals today. In New York, there is a lar[ge] sculpture of three rhinos[4]. The sculpture is called "The Last Three" and has an important message[5]: Many animals are in danger[6], and we mus[t] protect them.

(1)	مجسم - نموذج	(2)	حجر	(3)	معادن
(4)	وحيد القرن	(5)	رسالة	(6)	في خطر

- Read again. Write T (True), F (False), or DK (Don't Know). Then correct the false sentences.

1. A sculpture is a type of painting. ( )
   ....
2. One of the oldest sculptures is of a rhino. ( )
   ....
3. "The Last Three" is of three different animals. ( )
   ....
4. The message of "The Last Three" is that we must protect animals. ( )
   ....

Lessons (4&5)



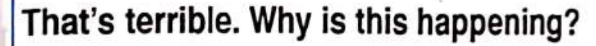
Reading Lesson 4 SB P. 101

Protecting the koala

Edward Kane lives near the city of Brisbane, Australia. He is working to help a very special[1] animal.

Edward, which animal are you trying to protect?
We're trying to protect the koala.

What can you tell us about koalas?
Koalas only live in the northeast[2], east, and southeast of Australia. In the past, there were millions of koalas here, actually millions! But now we think that there are only about 90,000 to 200,000. We don't have many any more.



That's terrible. Why is this happening?
It's because of human activity. People have cut down[3] the trees that koalas live in. Climate change is also a problem. We've had very dry weather for years here and too many fires[4]. In 2018, there were terrible[5] forest fires in this part of Australia and over 25,000 koalas died. The fires destroyed the trees and forests where they live.

So, the koalas are losing their homes?
Yes. Their homes are almost all gone and cities are dangerous for koalas. Koalas live in trees but if they have to walk on the ground[6], they move very slowly. Many are killed by fast cars on busy roads.

What must happen now?
We want the government[7] to create more space for the koalas, to stop building roads that no one really needs, and to give us money for important research. We also need money for conservation[8] programs and to plant more trees for the koalas. Koalas are in serious danger and we need to act now to save them.

Good luck, Edward!
Thanks.

(1)	مميز	(2)	شمال شرق	(3)	يقطع	(4)	حرائق
(5)	فظيع	(6)	على الأرض	(7)	الحكومة	(8)	حماية



Read the interview again. Complete the main points with the words from the box below.

climate - forest - millions - research - roads - space - thousands - tre

Number of koalas	Danger in cities
- in the past: .... - now:	- koalas are being killed on busy ....
Problems for koalas	**Help wanted from government**
- losing the .... they live in	- create more .... for koa
- .... change	- give money for ....
- very dry weather	
- .... fires	

Value

- I respect wildlife and the environment. احترم الحياة البرية والبيئة.



Reading Lesson 4 WB P. 65

Not all animals are cute!

People everywhere want to keep pandas, koalas, and monkeys safe. But wh about animals that aren't cute?



Look at this animal – it's a bat that lives in the U.S.A. It isn't cute, and it isn't beautiful! But it's really important for the forests it lives in, and human activity makes its life difficult.



Or how about this bird? The Californian Condor doesn't have bright colors, and its head is... unusual! But when it lives in mountains and forests, it is healthy for all the other animals that live there.



Many beautiful animals live in the sea – whales, dolphins, and fish. The blobfish doesn't have bright colors, and it isn't beautiful. It's in danger because of human activity in the sea.

I think that we should protect all animals – not just the cute ones!



Lesson 5 WB P. 66

Read the essay. What does the writer think? Choose a, b or c.

a. Only animals should be in national parks. ( )

b. National parks are good for people and animals. ( )

c. National parks are more important for people than animals. ( )

Should we visit national parks?

National parks[1] are beautiful places which protect animals.
People can't build houses or roads, so animals are safe.
They can make homes and find food without worrying[2] about people bothering[3] them.

Lots of people enjoy visiting national parks to see trees, plants, flowers – and animals. If people learn about animals and the environment[4], they might try to protect them. **In my opinion**, this is an important way to help animals in the future.

However, when people visit national parks, it can make life difficult for animals. **For example**, humans[5] can seem dangerous and scary[6] to animals. Visitors might move animals' homes[7] or make the countryside[8] dirty.

Finally, I feel that people should visit national parks. Of course, they must follow the rules[9] and be careful to not scare[10] the animals. But if they watch and learn from the things they see, it is a good thing.

(1)	حدائق وطنية	(2)	يقلق	(3)	يزعج / يضايق	(4)	البيئة	(5)	البشر
(6)	مُخيف	(7)	مواطن	(8)	الريف	(9)	قواعد	(10)	يخيف

- Read the essay. Answer the questions.

1. What can you do to help the wildlife in these places?

....

2. What can people around the world do to protect wildlife?

....



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. People lived in caves and drew paintings on the walls. This is called .... painting.
   a) house b) cave c) home d) desert
2. Children like to draw .... of circles and squ...
   a) bottles b) pottery c) patterns d) poetry
3. The word "........." means very, very sm...
   a) big b) tiny c) exist d) ant
4. Some artists are very .... They're very good at draw...
   a) skilled b) skill c) skull d) awful
5. People have .... the trees that koalas live...
   a) cut out b) cut for c) cut down d) cut over
6. We should .... wildlife and the environme...
   a) destroy b) build c) scare d) respect
7. People mustn't .... the anima...
   a) save b) scare c) scary d) help
8. The word "cute" means "not ....
   a) beautiful b) smart c) ugly d) nice
9. .... make life dangerous for the blobfis...
   a) Whales b) Humans c) Tigers d) Divers
10. A .... is a 3D mod...
    a) photo b) painting c) sculpture d) picture
11. The word "ancient" is opposite to ....
    a) old b) modern c) big d) cute
12. Humans .... the world with many other living thing...
    a) make b) take c) share d) divide

Lessons (4&5)

13. COVID-19 is a very .... disease.

a) good b) serious c) small d) usual

14. Students must .... their teachers at school.

a) respect b) protect c) save d) play

15. Some animals don't .... anymore. They died out.

a) make b) exist c) expect d) eat

16. We should keep animals ....

a) cold b) hungry c) hot d) safe

17. We add the suffix .... to make the adjective from the word "care".

a) -al b) -tion c) -ful d) -ist

18. There are too .... insects in the forest.

a) much b) many c) few d) lots

19. In my .... , animals are important and useful.

a) example b) finally c) opinion d) think

Writing Skill

A for-and-against essay مقال المؤيد والمعارض

- In a for-and-against essay, we present two different points of view.

الأسئلة في مقال المؤيد والمعارض، تقدم وجهتي نظر مختلفتين:

Animals are important and useful.

- This sentence presents a positive point and share an opinion that for the topic.

هذه الجملة تقدم وجهة نظر إيجابية وتشارك رأيًا مؤيدًا للموضوع.

Life can also be difficult for many people.

- This sentence presents a negative point and share an opinion that against the topic.

هذه الجملة تقدم وجهة نظر سلبية وتشارك رأيًا ضد / معارض للموضوع.

Elements of the essay

introduction | "for" information | "against" information | conclu

1) The introduction (paragraph 1):

- Begin with a short introduction. Make it clear what the essay is abou

مة قصيرة، توضح موضوع المقال.

2) The "for" information (paragraph 2):
ومات (المؤيدة) للموضوع:

- Start a new paragraph. Put one set of ideas. The "for" ideas; in this paragraph. Share your opinions and include examples.

قرة جديدة. ضع مجموعة الأفكار المؤيدة للموضوع في هذه الفقرة. شارك أرائك وضمنها أمثلة.

3) The "against" information (paragraph 3):
لومات (المعارضة) للموضوع:

- Start another new paragraph for a different set of ideas. This should b your against ideas. Again share your opinions and include examples.

فقرة جديدة لمجموعة أفكار مختلفة. هذه تكون أفكارك المعارضة للموضوع. ومرة ثانية، شارك أرائك وضمنها أمثلة.

4) The conclusion (paragraph 4):
اتمة

- Your last paragraph is your conclusion. Give your final opinion and end the essay.

تمة هي الفقرة الأخيرة. قدم رأيك الأخير وانه المقال.

Signal words and phrases
ات وعبارات الإشارة

- A signal is like a sign. It gives you information, such as the writer is introducing a new point.

شارة تشبه اللافتة، وتعطيك معلومات مثل أن الكاتب يقدم نقطة جديدة.

- When you write an essay, use signal words and phrases to introduce various points. When readers see a signal phrase, they know what kind of information to expect.

عندما تكتب مقالًا، استخدم كلمات وعبارات لكي تقدم أفكارًا مختلفة. عندما يرى القارئ عبارة إشارة، يعرف نوع المعلومات التي يتوقعها.

من أمثلة عبارات الإشارة:

To give examples:	- For example, ...
To give an opinion:	- In my opinion, ...
	- I think .... / I believe ....
	- It seems to me ....
To talk about a feeling or idea we present:	- I feel that ...
To make a different point:	- However, ...
To make a conclusion:	- Finally, ... - To finish, ...



Writing Lesson 5 SB P. 102

Read the for-and-against essay.

Should we protect animals?

Humans share the world with many other living things. Is it our job to protect every animal? → Introduction

It seems to me that life is better when we help each other. **In my opinion**, that includes animals as well as people. Animals are important and useful. They are also special, and some of them need our help. → "for" information

However, life can also be difficult for many people. **For example**, we all have to go to school or work. Adults must find money for their families. Some people believe that animals should look after themselves. The strong ones will be OK. → "against" information

Finally, **I feel that** people don't have to protect all animals. But, I think we should try to save the ones that are in danger. → Conclusion

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d

1. A sculpture is a 3D ....
   a) painting b) model c) picture d) photo
2. People used .... and gold to make sculptu
   a) rocks b) wood c) stone d) paper
3. There is a large sculpture of .... rhinos in New Yo
   a) one b) three c) four d) six
4. The .... of "The Last Three" is that we must protect the
   a) mail b) letter c) message d) massage

2 Complete the following dialog.

Tamer is asking Hadi about koalas.

Tamer : Hello. Can I ask you some questions?
Hadi : Hello. 1) ....
Tamer : Which animal are you interested in?
Hadi : 2) ....
Tamer : 3) ....
Hadi : Koalas only live in Australia.
Tamer : 4) ....
Hadi : There are about 90,000 to 200,000 koalas now.
Tamer : Thanks for your time.
Hadi : You're welcome.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

protected - mountains - condor - protect - colors

Not all animals are cute! The California1) .... doesn't have bright 2) ...., and its head is unusual. But when it lives in 3).......................... and forests, it's healthy for all the other animals that live there. I think we should 4) ....all animals - not just the cute ones.



Read the following text and answer the questions.

Long before anyone could write, people were making art. These people lived in caves, and they drew paintings on the walls of their homes. So we call this art cave painting. In Europe, there are cave paintings in France, Spain, Italy, Portugal, and Germany. There are also cave paintings in parts of Australia and countries in Africa. The oldest example of cave painting we know of is in the Blombos Caves in South Africa and it was painted over 70,000 years ago.

Back then, there weren't any paintbrushes, so the artists used small, thin bones to paint their pictures. They didn't have paint, so they mixed various things together, including plants, animal blood, and tiny bits of stone. Black and red were the main colors they made. Sometimes they drew interesting patterns of circles and squares. Often, they painted animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "tiny" means ....
   a) nice b) very small c) very big d) modern
2. There weren't any .... at that time.
   a) colors b) stones c) paintbrushes d) animals

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where did people live in the past? ....
4. What is the main idea of the text? ....
5. How old is the oldest example of cave painting? ....
6. What did they sometimes draw? ....

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Should we protect animals that are in danger?

....

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

Elephant behavior

Researchers have seen several types of behavior which elepha
share with humans. For example, elephants look after each other wh
they are ill. Elephants feel sad when other elephants die and sometim
they feel sad for many months. Elephants will work together as a group
rescue family members that are in danger and they don't get angry wi
each other as often as other wild animals do. Elephants seem to love ea
other and look after each other in ways that we have not understood befo

Animal researchers

Scientists study science and the world around us. But there are area
of the sea which are so deep that it is too difficult or too dangerous for us
So, they use animals to help us. Scientists are using dolphins as researcher
too! The dolphins wear a small machine with a camera that helps them fin
dangerous objects that can hurt humans and wildlife. Dolphins can do thi
because they can swim to places that are too difficult or dangerous fo
divers. The machines also collect information that helps scientists stud
different ocean environments.

Should we protect animals?

Humans share the world with many other living things. It seems to me
that life is better if we help each other.

In my opinion, animals are important and useful. They are also special,
and some of them need our help.

However, life can be difficult for many people. For example, we all
have to go to school or work. So we can't look after all animals.
Finally, I think we should try to save the animals that are in danger.

Dictation on Unit (9)

Lessons (1 & 2)

قرد	....	عالِم سلوك الحيوان	....
فيل	....	نشاط بشري	....
غابة	....	يحب بعضهم البعض	....
أدغال	....	يدرب	....
سلوك	....	أفراد الأسرة	....
حيوانات برية	....	في خطر	....
حوت	....	في مجموعات كبيرة	....

Lesson (3)

دولفين	....	نقاش	....
درجة الحرارة	....	يجمع معلومات	....
محيط	....	وجهة نظر	....
صيدلي	....	يرسل رسالة	....
الفقمة	....	مغطى بـ	....
الحمام الزاجل	....	مفيد لـ	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

أنماط	....	قديم جدًا	....
ماهر	....	مختلف	....
شديد	....	وحيد القرن	....
رسومات	....	مزدحم	....
معادن	....	قطع من الحجارة	....
لامع	....	في رأيي	....
يدمر	....	يتعلم	....
جميل - جذاب	....	يتشارك مع	....
فرشاة تلوين	....	الحماية	....



Review Based On Unit (9)

Vocabulary

elephant	فيل	pharmacist	[illegible]
behavior	سلوك	human beings	[illegible]
penguin	بطريق	deep	[illegible]
snow leopard	نمر الثلوج	cave paintings	رسم في الكهوف
forest	غابة	patterns	- زخارف
jungle	أدغال	skilled	[illegible]
eagle	نسر	sculpture	منحوت
ethologist	عالِم سلوك الحيوان	research	[illegible]
domestic	منزلي - أليف	rhino	القرن - كركدن
rescue	ينقذ	various	[illegible]
climate change	تغير المناخ	conservationist	بيئي
seal	فقمة	artist	- رسام
essential	ضروري	in my opinion	رأيي
carrier pigeons	الحمام الزاجل	cute	- جميل

Grammar

Relative Clauses

e.g. People who / that study animals have to spend a lot of time outside.

e.g. Plants which / that grow in deserts don't need a lot of water.

Speaking

Explaining a point of view

- Do you mean	- I believe ....
- I'm afraid I don't understand.	- In my opinion
- I'm glad you asked me that. Well,....	- I think ....



Test Based On Unit (9)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today is the .... day to buy tickets.
   a) first b) second c) last d) best
2. The tickets are for the .... concert.
   a) pop b) birthday c) jaz d) school
3. The party finishes at .... on Sunday June 9th.
   a) noon b) morning c) midnight d) night
4. More than 60 .... play different music.
   a) teams b) bands c) groups d) students

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Animals can be .... to help people.
   a) killed b) trained c) learnt d) walked
2. .... live in the sea.
   a) Tigers b) Pandas c) Whales d) Monkeys
3. Some areas of the sea are so .... that we can't get there.
   a) near b) deep c) high d) long

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

tigers - danger - rhinos - stone - gold

People have made sculptures of animals for thousands of years. They have used 1)................... and expensive metals like 2)................... to make sculptures of animals that were important to them. In New York, there is a large sculpture of three 3).............................. The sculpture is called "The Last Three" and it has an important message: Many animals are in 4)..............., and we must protect them.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

An ethologist is a person who studies animal behavior. We've always known that we can train pets and domestic animals to behave in certain ways. For example we can train animals to help blind people move around. We can also guess how pets are feeling. For example, we believe that when cats are happy, they purr.

However, ethologists have also realized just how amazing wild animals are. A wild animal is one that lives in nature and has not bee tamed by humans. Wild animals show many surprising behaviors. Som of the most amazing wild animals are elephants.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "domestic" is opposite of ....

   a) big b) wild c) nice d) pet

2. When cats are happy, they ....

   a) purr b) run c) cry d) laugh

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What kind of animals can we train? ....
4. What does an ethologist do? ....
5. What's the main idea of the text? ....
6. What do you think a wild animal is? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Elephants are animals .... seem to love each other

   a) who b) when c) which d) why

2. The man .... lives next door is a scientist

   a) which b) who c) where d) whose

3. This is the film .... I told you about

   a) who b) when c) that d) whom

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets

1. People .... (which) need wood cut down trees.
2. Animals .... (who) live near the sea often eat fish.
3. A good friend is someone .... (which) is helpful and kind.
4. The story .... (who) I read yesterday was interesting.

Test Based On Unit (9)

7 Complete the following dialog.

Sara and Mona are talking about a visit to the Science Museum.

	:	Hi, Mona. What did you do last weekend?
Mona	:	Hi, Sara. 1) ....
Sara	:	Really? 2) .... ?
Mona	:	I went with my family.
Sara	:	3) .... ?
Mona	:	I saw amazing animals such as the dinosaur.
Sara	:	Did you enjoy your time there?
Mona	:	4) ....

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Dolphins

....

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "Pretend I'm your brother."	a- Edward
2. "Give me your sword."	b- Tom
3. "I want to see my sisters."	c- Hugo

B Answer the following questions.

1. What did Arthur do after Miles left the country?

....

2. How was the prison?

....

3. What did the woman at the market have?

....

Review Based On Units (7 - 8 - 9)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **Vocabula**

1. We went for a drive in the old town. It was nice because there was a lot of ....
   a) animals b) traffic c) people d) trees
2. At the airport, we waited an hour for our ....
   a) journey b) walk c) flight d) trip
3. Wael sometimes gets headaches, so his mom has made an .... t see the doctor.
   a) date b) appointment c) program d) check
4. At the end of our holiday, we bought some .... to take home
   a) fruit b) books c) souvenirs d) tools
5. You should take this .... after you have eate
   a) homework b) medicine c) photo d) drive
6. We traveled around the city by ....
   a) plane b) ship c) streetcar d) foot
7. Jane is a really good .... I love her paintings
   a) doctor b) artist c) nurse d) pilot
8. Tom goes to school .... because he likes walking
   a) by car b) by bus c) on foot d) on a horse
9. My favorite .... is in this film
   a) actor b) doctor c) player d) artist
10. Snakes can eat .... which are bigger than they are
    a) grass b) animals c) fruit d) leaves
11. Scientists travel to .... places to study snakes
    a) old b) different c) small d) high
12. I'd love to fly in a .... one day
    a) boat b) ship c) helicopter d) bike

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Grammar

1. Gebreel said that the castle .... beautiful.
   a) is b) was c) are d) has
2. Amani .... me that she drank eight cups of water every day.
   a) said b) asked c) told d) promised
3. Ali said he .... often play tennis.
   a) isn't b) doesn't c) don't d) didn't
4. Hana .... for her parents all day.
   a) wait b) has been waiting c) is waiting d) waited
5. How long have you .... chess?
   a) play b) been playing c) playing d) plays
6. The cat .... there for hours.
   a) sat b) has been sitting c) was sitting d) sits
7. Elliot has been cycling .... he was six.
   a) for b) by c) when d) since
8. We .... studying Spanish since 2020.
   a) are b) have been c) were d) has
9. Clare has been feeling ill .... three days.
   a) since b) for c) just d) ever
10. Do you know the girl .... won the art competition?
    a) who b) which c) where d) whom
11. One place .... I would love to visit is the science museum.
    a) who b) which c) when d) whose
12. My dad bought a drone .... can take photographs.
    a) when b) where c) who d) which

13. The person .... owns this boat is ver

a) who b) which c) when d) whon

14. They have been playing football .... a long

a) since b) for c) yet d) now

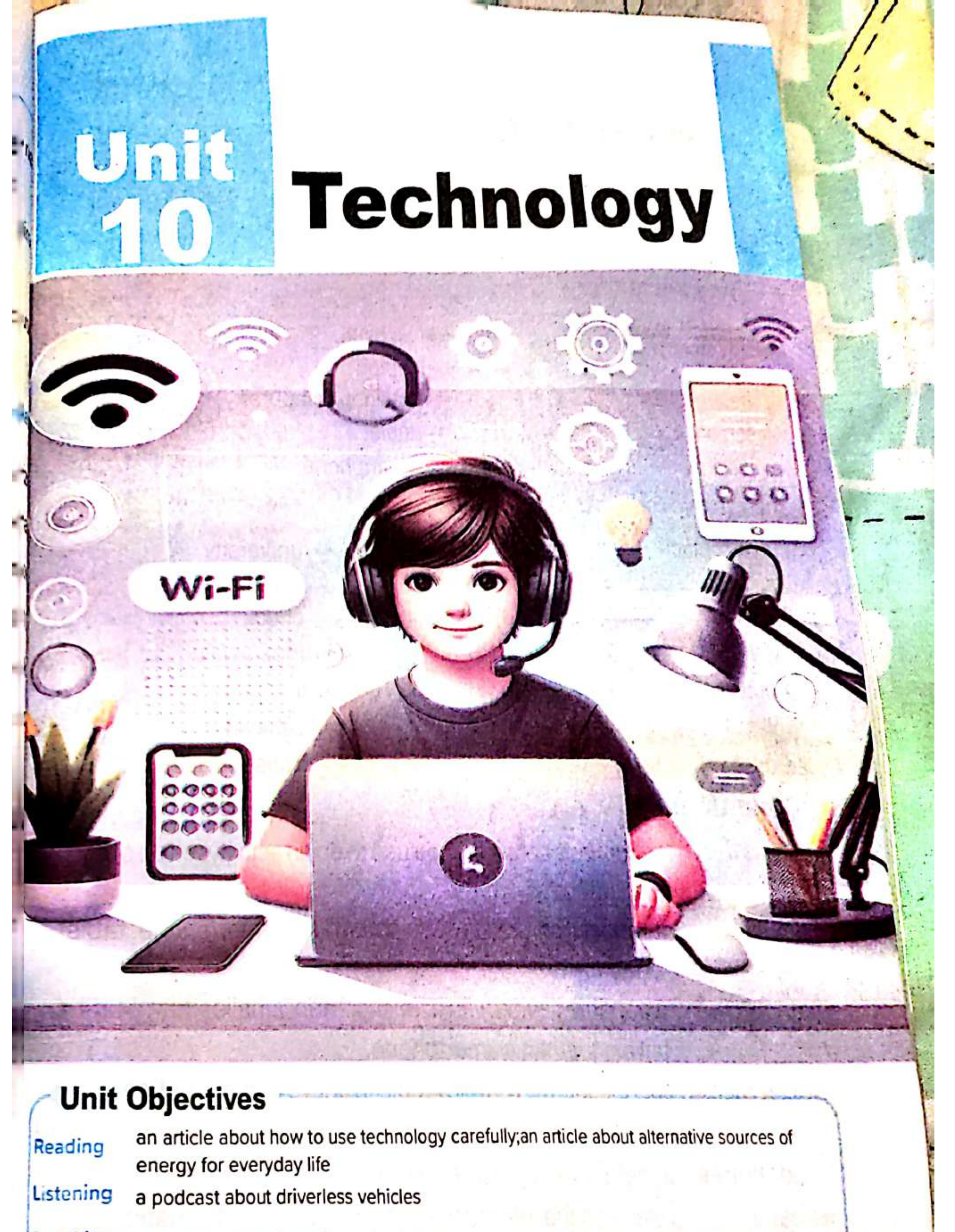
15. Mom said she .... the h

a) cleans b) cleaning c) was cleaning d) clean

3 Complete the sentences with the correct of the word(s) in brac

1. He .... (said) his dad that he won the first p
2. Mom said that she .... (cook) lunch every
3. He .... (play) tennis for three hours n
4. We have been living in Cairo .... (for) 20
5. How .... (many) has he been cycling to wo
6. I read about a scientist .... (which) lived with elephants in Af for a year.
7. The people .... (which) invented the wheel changed the w we travel.
8. Plants .... (who) grow in the desert don't need a lot of wa
9. Rehab said she .... (call) her mo
10. He's been practicing the piano .... (since) a ye
11. How long have you .... (learn) Frenc
12. This is the book .... (who) my brother has just rea
13. Sara said that .... (she) brother loved fis
14. He lives in a town .... (where) is very close to the mountain
15. The boy .... (which) broke the window was punishe

Unit 10 Technology



Unit Objectives

Reading	an article about how to use technology carefully;an article about alternative sources of energy for everyday life
Listening	a podcast about driverless vehicles
Speaking	give instructions for using a device
Writing	a far-and-against essay about technology
Language	defining and non-defining relative clauses

Lessons (1 & 2)

- Vocabulary and speaking
- Reading
- Grammar
- Listening

Key vocabulary ...رئيسية

apps	تطبيقات	website	...إلكتروني
devices	أجهزة	laptop	...توب
headphones	سماعات الرأس	desktop computer	...مكتبي
screen	شاشة	tablet	...لوحي (تابلت)
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	smartphone	...ذكي.

Extra vocabulary ...إضافية

eye-contact	اتصال بصري	correct (adj)	صحيح	university	...عة
address	عنوان	trust(ed)	يثق	information	...ومات
online	عبر الإنترنت	post(ed)	ينشر على وسائل التواصل	check	...قق / يفحص
age	عصر	share(d)	يشارك	meanwhile	...هذه الأثناء
popular	مشهور / شائع	stay(ed)	يبقى / يظل	instead	...من
rules	قواعد	cross(ed)	يعبر	vehicles	...بات
drones	طائرة مسيرة	driverless	بلا سائق / ذاتي القيادة	transportation	...ائل النقل

Definitions ...فات

app	a computer program you use to do an activity; often on smartphones
device	an electronic piece of equipment like a smartphone, tablet, or laptop.
tablet	a portable device with a touchscreen, smaller than a laptop but bigger than a smartphone.
social media	connecting with other people to share content online through apps like Facebook and Instagram.
headphones	something you put over your ears so you can hear music
website	a place on the internet where you can find information
screen	the part of a computer or TV that we look at
to post on social media	to put a photograph, text or a video on the internet



Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	PP
get	يحصل على	got	got
find	يجد	found	found
wear	يلبس / يرتدى	wore	worn
take off	يخلع	took off	taken off
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	cross	the street	يعبر الشارع
	information	يحصل على معلومات	have	power	لديه (طاقة / كهرباء)
	into university	يلتحق بالجامعة	do	activities	يقوم بأنشطة
wear	headphones	يلبس / يضع سماعات الرأس	make	cars	يصنع سيارات
fly	drones	يطير المسيرات			

Important expressions تعبيرات هامة

make eye-contact	يتواصل بصريًا / يقوم بالنظر إلى العينين	make use of	يستفيد من
touch the screen	يلمس الشاشة	get to school	يصل للمدرسة
walk home	يمشي إلى المنزل	move goods	ينقل البضائع
travel around the city	يتجول حول المدينة	see around us	نرى ما حولنا
have my headphones on	اضع سماعات الرأس على أذني	go online	يتصل بالإنترنت

Important prepositions حروف جر هامة

share with	يتشارك ... مع	get rid of	يتخلص من
on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	take off	يخلع
careful about	حذر بشأن	put away	يضع شيئًا «مكانه»
careful with	حذر من		

Synonyms & Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
modern	حديث / معاصر	up-to-date / new	old-fashioned / old	قديم
correct	صحيح	right / true	incorrect / false	غير صحيح
connect	يتصل / يوصل	communicate	disconnect	يقطع الاتصال



1. address – title

◆ address
(السكن - البريد الإلكتروني)

e.g. What's your address? - 20 Orabi Street.
Your email address is m2929@yahoo.com.

◆ title
(كتاب - قصة) / لقب شخص

e.g. The book title is Oliver Twist. - He wants to keep the title "King

2. quiet / quite

◆ quiet (adj)
(صفة)

e.g. You should find a quiet place when you study.

◆ quite (adv)
حدًا ما (ظرف) ويأتي بعدها صفة.

e.g. This tablet is quite expensive.

3. information
(اسم لا يُعد) ويأتي معها فعل في المفرد.

e.g. You must check that the information is correct.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What's the .... of the new book
   a) address b) title c) noun d) dress
2. The information you gave me .... incorrect
   a) was b) were c) are d) have
3. I like to stay in my room because it's ....
   a) quit b) quite c) quiet d) quietly



Reading Lesson 1 SB P. 107

Going online

Technology can be exciting[1] and fun, but we must remember to use it carefully. Look at the advice[2] for Rahma, Omar, and Arwa.

Rahma: "I like sharing what I'm doing and funny photographs online."

Today's modern age[3] is the best time when we can make use of modern technology. We all enjoy using social media which is a popular[4] technology for sharing information and photos with friends. But people who post[5] on social media must be careful about what they share. Photographs stay[6] on the internet for a very long time. In the future, when you want to get into university or get a job, other people can look at your social media to learn about you. What do you want them to see?

Omar: "I get information from the internet for my school projects."

The information we can find on the internet isn't always correct[7]. Good websites are where we must look. Look at more than one website and check[8] that the information is correct. Speak to your parents or teachers, who you can trust[9], if you need help.

Arwa: "I watch music videos when I'm walking home from school."

Music and videos, which we can find online, are great to enjoy on our smartphones. But when you are walking, wearing[10] headphones and looking at a screen[11] can be dangerous. We need to hear[12] and see things around us. Always take off[13] your headphones and put your phone away when you cross[14] the street.

(1) مثيرة	(2) نصيحة	(3) عصر	(4) مشهور
(5) ينشر	(6) يبقى	(7) صحيح	(8) تحقق
(9) يثق	(10) يضع	(11) شاشة	(12) نسمع
(13) اخلع	(14) تعبر		



Paraphrasing — إعادة الصياغة

- Often comprehension questions give the same information as the te[xt] but use different words.

  من الأحيان، تقدم أسئلة الفهم نفس المعلومات الموجودة في النص، ولكنها تستخدم كلمات مختلفة.

- Read the questions and underline the key words.

  سئلة و ضع خطًا تحت الكلمات الرئيسية.

- Think of synonyms for the key words. Are these words in the text?

  مرادفات الكلمات الأساسية. هل هذه الكلمات موجودة في النص؟

Practice

✲ Read the article again and answer T (True), F (False), or DK (don't kno[w]). Correct the false sentences.

1) We need to be careful with technology. (
2) You shouldn't put any photographs online. (
3) Some people find information about other people on the Internet. (
4) There are websites that check information about people. (
5) Don't use information from the Internet in your homework. (
6) You shouldn't look at your phone when you're crossing the road. (

Listening

Lesson 1 WB P. 70

Grandpa : Oliver, what are you doing? Oliver ..Oliver?

Oliver : Oh, sorry, Grandpa. I had my headphones on to listen to music.

Grandpa : Do you think you can help me, please? I need to send an email, but my tablet isn't working. The screen is black.

Oliver : Does the device have any power?

Grandpa : Oh, that might be the problem. I'll check.

Oliver : Meanwhile, let's use my tablet instead. I've got a new app tha[t] tells me how long I've spent on social media each day, so I don't use it too much.

Grandpa : That's very clever.

Oliver : Yes, it is. I got it from this website. Look, ...

Reading Lesson 1 SB P. 108



This is a photograph of me in an online lesson, which is my favorite way to learn. This is the room where I sit, because it is a quiet place in our house. My teacher, who is really great, sometimes puts us in groups to do activities together. There are times when we need to use the internet to find information. Students who use technology all the time know a lot of good websites! Good websites are where you can find information that is true and correct.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can listen to music with ....
   a) apps b) headphones c) book d) screen
2. Tablets and smartphones are ....
   a) websites b) screens c) devices d) tools
3. We can touch the .... on a smartphone.
   a) mouse b) website c) screen d) headphones
4. A/An .... is a place on the internet where we can find information.
   a) website b) app c) tablet d) program
5. My tablet isn't working. The .... is black.
   a) mouse b) keyboard c) screen d) computer
6. Social media is a good way to .... with people.
   a) play b) work c) connect d) argue
7. Put your phone .... when you cross the street.
   a) on b) away c) at d) in
8. I've got a new .... on my phone. It's very useful.
   a) program b) web c) app d) device

9. We all enjoy using .... media

a) society b) sociable c) socially d) social

10. We need to be careful .... technology

a) in b) at c) with d) for

11. Speak to your parents or teachers, who you can .... if you need help

a) trust b) take c) think d) get

12. Technology can be .... and fun.

a) excited b) interested c) exciting d) bored

13. Don't give anyone you don't know your .... or telephone number.

a) address b) homework c) title d) dress

14. My tablet isn't working. It doesn't have any ....

a) light b) power c) energy d) fuel

15. A/An .... is the part of a computer or TV that we look at.

a) app b) device c) screen d) phone

16. The word " .... " is the antonym of "old".

a) big b) modern c) clever d) small

17. The word "connect" means to .... with people.

a) communicate b) work c) disconnect d) find

18. The information I found on the internet .... useful.

a) were b) was c) have d) am

19. When your dad speaks, face him and make ....

a) ear-contact b) eye-contact c) leg-contact d) fun

20. We can make .... of modern technology today.

a) use b) play c) fun d) take

Speaking Skills

Listening to others and turn-taking الاستماع إلى الآخرين وتبادل الأدوار

- When your partner speaks, face them and make eye contact. Let them finish speaking before you take your turn.

عندما يتحدث شريكك، واجهه وقم بالتواصل البصري معه. دعه ينتهي من الحديث قبل أن يأتي دورك.

Talking about Technology التحدث عن التكنولوجيا

Situation	Reply
What type of computer do you use at home? ما نوع الكمبيوتر الذي تستخدمه في البيت؟	I sometimes use my dad's laptop. أحياناً أستخدم اللاب توب الخاص بوالدي.
What about school? وماذا عن المدرسة؟	We use desktop computers at school. نستخدم أجهزة حاسوب مكتبية في المدرسة.
What do you use a computer for? فيم تستخدم الكمبيوتر؟	To search for information for my homework and to share things with my friends. للبحث عن معلومات للواجب المدرسي ، ومشاركة الأشياء مع أصدقائي.
How often do you use a smartphone? كم مرة تستخدم الهاتف الذكي؟	I use it on the weekend. استخدمه في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

Listening Skills

Identifying facts or opinions
تحديد الحقائق أو الآراء

- It is sometimes difficult to know when people are giving facts or their own opinions.
يصعب أحيانًا معرفة متى يقدم الأشخاص حقائق أو آراءهم الخاصة.
- Listen out for phrases that introduce opinions such as I think, or in my opinion.
استمع إلى العبارات التي تقدم آراء مثل أعتقد، أو في رأيي.

Practice

Are the following sentences facts (F) or opinions (O)?

1) At the moment, we can't make cars or trains that think like people. ( )
2) I think you might be surprised at how many vehicles without drivers there already are. ( )
3) Computers can fly drones. ( )
4) You can even get a taxi without a driver in some cities around the world. ( )
5) I think that this technology will save lives. ( )
6) In my opinion, we'll use them more and more in many different travel and transportation situations. ( )

Writing Skills

Rules for using modern technology
قواعد استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة

Technology can be exciting and fun, but remember to use it carefully.
يمكن أن تكون التكنولوجيا ممتعة ومثيرة، ولكن تذكر أن تستخدمها بحذر.

Be careful about what you share on social media.
كن حذرًا فيما تشاركه على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

Don't give anyone you don't know your address or telephone number.
لا تعطي أي أحد لا تعرفه عنوانك أو رقم هاتفك.

Look at good websites and check that the information you get is correct.
انظر إلى المواقع الجيدة، وتحقق من أن المعلومات التي تحصل عليها صحيحة.

Don't spend too much time on social media.
لا تقض وقتًا كبيرًا على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.



Defining and non-defining relative clauses

جمل الوصل المُعرفة وغير المُعرفة

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use relative clauses to tell people which person, thing, place or time we are talking about.**

نستخدم الجمل الموصولة لنخبر الناس عن أي شخص أو شيء أو مكان أو وقت نتكلم.

who for people — للأشخاص

e.g. Speak to teacher, who you can trust, if you need help.

which for things — للأشياء

e.g. The bag which she bought was blue and white.

where for places — للمكان

e.g. Good websites are where we must look.

when for time — للوقت

e.g. Today's modern age is the best time when we can make use of modern technology.

whose belonging to — للملكية

e.g. The woman whose car is black is a doctor.

1 Defining relative clauses: جمل الوصل المعرفة

They give necessary information that identifies a person, place, time or thing. تقدم معلومات ضرورية تحدد الشخص أو المكان أو الوقت أو الشيء.

e.g. The book which I'm reading at the moment is very interesting.

e.g. July is the month when the weather is very hot.

Note We don't use commas with defining relative clauses.

لا نستخدم فاصلة مع جمل الوصل المعرفة.

e.g. The village where I live is beautiful. ✔

The village, where I live, is beautiful. ✘

2 Non-defining relative clauses: جمل الوصل غير المعرفة

- They give extra information that is not essential.

تقدم معلومات غير ضرورية.

■ We use commas with them. نستخدم الفاصلة معها.

e.g. Jack, who lives in my street, is a doctor.

Summer, when the weather is nice, is a good time to go on vacation.

Remember

We can use the relative pronouns which or that to talk about things in defining relative clauses. We don't use that in non-defining relative clauses.

يمكننا استخدام ضمير الموصول (which) أو (that) للتحدث عن الأشياء في الجمل الموصولة المحددة. ولا نستخدم (that) في الجمل الموصولة غير المحددة.

This is the painting which I like best.

This is the painting that I like best.

The play, which we enjoyed, was three hours long. (Not The play, that ....)

Practice on Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The city .... he was born in is on the coast.
   a) who b) when c) where d) whose
2. Ali, ... won the prize, is 12 years old.
   a) whose b) who c) which d) where
3. These headphones, ... are black, are really good.
   a) who b) when c) that d) which
4. The man .... works at the train station is my neighbor.
   a) who b) whose c) when d) where
5. June is the month .... I was born.
   a) when b) who c) which d) that
6. Manchester is the city .... my cousin lives.
   a) that b) where c) who d) which
7. Music and videos, ... we can find online, are great to enjoy on our headphones.
   a) when b) who c) which d) that

8. That's the woman .... phone I borrowed yesterday.

a) who b) which c) whose d) where

9. Spring is the season .... the weather is best.

a) whose b) who c) where d) when

10. Sara, ... sister lives in Mexico, works in tourism.

a) who b) whose c) that d) where

11. This is the classroom .... we have English lessons.

a) when b) where c) who d) whose

12. The present .... she gave me was very nice.

a) who b) when c) whose d) which

13. The man .... car was stolen reported the police.

a) whose b) who c) which d) when

14. The park .... she played as a child is now a housing development.

a) when b) where c) who d) whose

15. Next summer, ... I go to Australia, I will learn to surf.

a) which b) who c) when d) where

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. The bus, ... (who) only comes twice a day, is always late.
2. Adam, ... (whose) is my best friend, plays volleyball every Saturday.
3. The room .... (when) I stay is quiet.
4. The teacher, ... (which) son is my friend, is very kind.
5. Summer is the best time .... (who) we go to the beach.
6. The house .... (where) I bought was built in 2018.
7. I know a man .... (who) car is blue.
8. The book .... (when) is on the table is mine.
9. This is the place .... (which) we first met.
10. Cairo, ... (where) is the capital of Egypt, is a beautiful city.

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can get information from the ....
   a) bank b) hospital c) internet d) screen
2. The information isn't always ....
   a) correct b) false c) good d) bad
3. You should look at more than one ....
   a) screen b) tablet c) website d) board
4. If you need help, you can speak to your ....
   a) friends b) children c) doctors d) parents

2 Complete the following dialog.

Dad : Omar, what are you doing?

Omar : 1) ....

Dad : Music! Can you help me with my tablet?

Omar : Sure. 2) ....?

Dad : It isn't working. The screen is black.

Omar : 3) ....?

Dad : No, it doesn't have any power.

Omar : Oh, that might be the problem. I'll check.

Dad : 4) ....

Omar : You're welcome.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

cross - screen - smartphones - around - computers

Music and videos, which we can find online, are great to enjoy on our 1) .... But when you are walking, wearing headphones and looking at a 2) .... can be dangerous. We need to hear and see things 3) .... us. Always take off your headphones and put your phone away when you 4) .... the street.

Lessons (1 & 2)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You must follow the .... when using the internet.
   a) roles b) rules c) rulers d) rolls
2. I .... information from the internet.
   a) play b) give c) get d) has
3. People who .... on social media must be careful.
   a) can b) past c) post d) pest
4. You must .... that information is correct.
   a) have b) get c) check d) found
5. Tablets and laptops are ....
   a) apps b) devices c) advice d) tools
6. I wear my .... to listen to music.
   a) shoes b) headphones c) apps d) screen
7. A/An .... is a computer program you use to do an activity, often on smartphones.
   a) screen b) tablet c) app d) website
8. The present .... I bought for Mom was a ring.
   a) who b) which c) where d) when
9. The woman .... is wearing a green dress is my teacher.
   a) when b) which c) who d) whose
10. This is the school .... I learn.
    a) where b) when c) who d) which
11. The boy .... hair is curly is my brother.
    a) who b) whose c) which d) that

12. My uncle; .... lives in Luxor, is a doctor.

a) whose b) who c) which d) that

13. Ramadan is the month .... we fast.

a) which b) where c) who d) when

14. The story .... I read is very interesting.

a) that b) which c) who d) when

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets

1. The town .... (when) I live is on the coast.
2. My mom, ... (which) was born in 1980, went to school in Giza.
3. My shoes, ... (what) I bought at the market, are new.
4. April is the month .... (which) I was born.
5. Our neighbor, ... (who) son won the prize, is an engineer.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Using technology

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (3)

- Reading
- Speaking
- Pronunciation

Key vocabulary

مفردات رئيسية

energy	طاقة	solar panels	ألواح شمسية
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	washing machine	غسالة
human energy	طاقة بشرية	rush hour	ساعة الذروة
wind farms	محطات الرياح	cell phone	هاتف محمول
resources	مصادر	search for	يبحث عن

Extra vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

organization	منظمة	principal	مدير
invent(ed)	يخترع	difference	فرق / اختلاف
machine	آلة	choice	اختيار
knee	ركبة	typed(d)	يطبع (يكتب على الكمبيوتر)
phone call	مكالمة هاتفية	download(ed)	يحمل
battery	بطارية	print(ed)	يطبع
charge(d)	يشحن	printer	طابعة
floor	أرضية	soccer game	مباراة كرة القدم
environment	بيئة	laundry detergent	مسحوق الغسيل

Definitions

تعريفات

turn into	to change and become something different	يتحول إلى
wind farm	an area of land on which there are lots of wind turbines for producing electricity	محطة الرياح

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
show	يبين	showed	shown

Collocations

make	electricity	charge	a battery	
	energy		a cell phone	
	a difference	drive	a car	
turn on/off	the laptop	download	the app	
	the tablet	click on	the picture	
	the screen	contact	friends and family	

Important expressions

a one-minute walk	put money together
have an idea	Here they are
it's better for	do the washing

Important prepositions

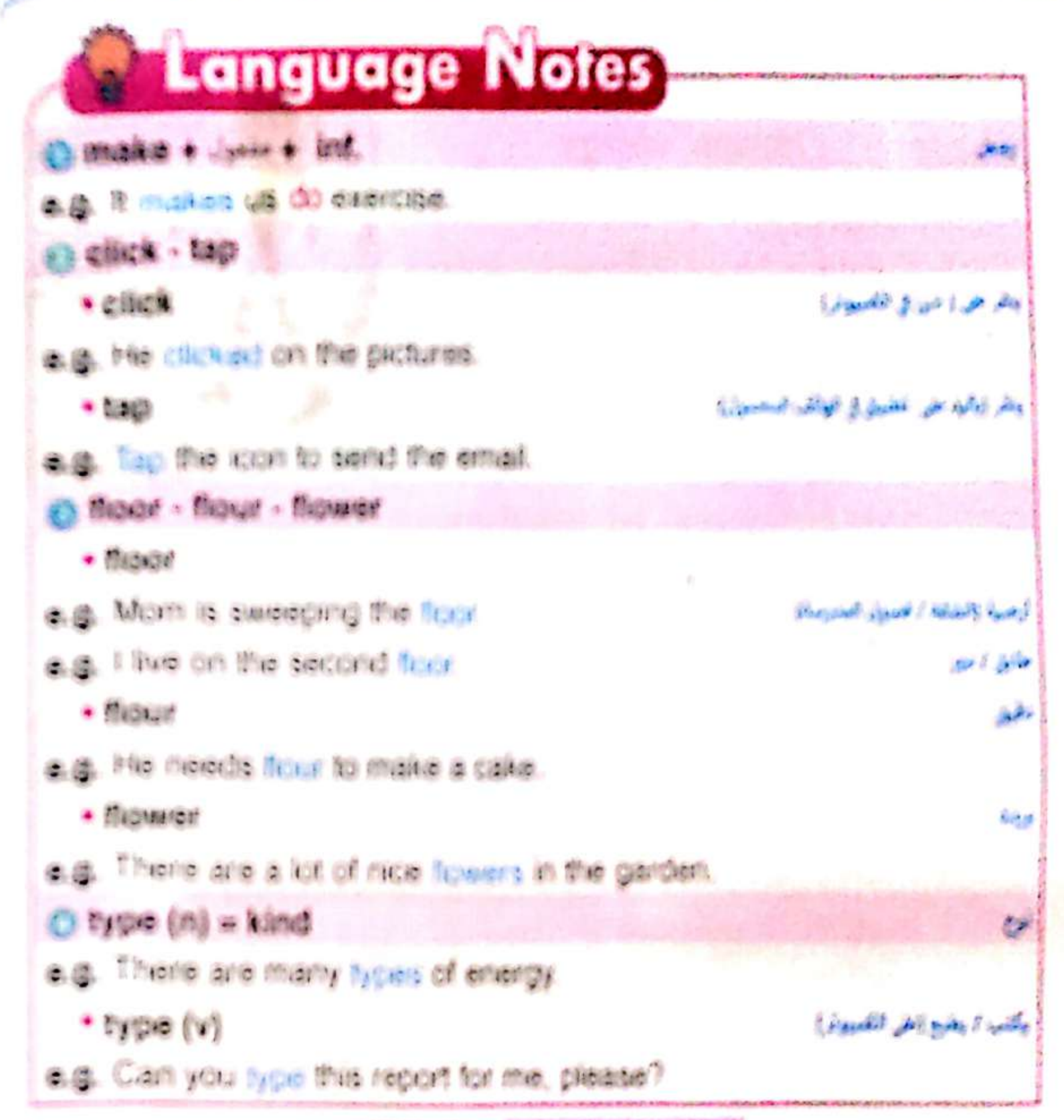
turn into	at rush hour
on windy day	put ... inside
bad for	get ... out

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
turn on	switch on	switch / turn off
download	unload	upload
dirty	unclean	clean
inside	in / into	outside

Prefixes & Suffixes

non-	renewable	→	non-renewable
-ity	electric	→	electricity
-able	renew	→	renewable



Language Notes

make + مفعول + inf. — يجعل

e.g. It makes us do exercise.

click - tap

- **click** — ينقر على / (في الكمبيوتر)

e.g. He clicked on the pictures.

- **tap** — ينقر (بالإصبع) على (شاشة في الهواتف المحمولة)

e.g. Tap the icon to send the email.

floor - flour - flower

- **floor** — أرضية (الغرفة) / الطابق

e.g. Mom is sweeping the floor.

e.g. I live on the second floor. — طابق / دور

- **flour** — دقيق

e.g. He needs flour to make a cake.

- **flower** — وردة

e.g. There are a lot of nice flowers in the garden.

type (n) = kind — نوع

e.g. There are many types of energy.

- **type (v)** — يكتب / يطبع (على الكمبيوتر)

e.g. Can you type this report for me, please?

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. To send a message on your phone, ... the "send" button.
   a) click   b) tap   c) write   d) give
2. Mom made us .... our room.
   a) to clean   b) cleaned   c) clean   d) cleans
3. There's broken glass on the .... of the room.
   a) floor   b) flour   c) flower   d) ground



Lesson 3 SB P. 110

"Human" energy

Many countries[1] are trying to make more electricity from wind, water, or the sun. We need to use more renewable[2] energy like this to help the Earth.

Some organizations[3] are inventing machines that use human energy. When a person moves, they can make energy. A few years ago, scientists at a university in Canada made a small device[4] to wear on the knee. It uses the energy that your legs make when you walk, and turns it into electricity. A one-minute walk makes electricity for a thirty-minute phone call[5]. With this invention, you'll always have energy for your cell phone battery.

At a school in Canterbury, England, the students walk quickly from class to class. Why? The school has a special floor that makes electricity for the school lights. When the students' feet hit the floor[6], they make energy. The energy they make in one year can charge[7] over 850 cell phones or drive an electric car seven miles!

The man who invented the floor first had the idea when he was watching hundreds of people walking through a very busy[8] London station at rush hour[9], and thought how good it would be to use all that energy.

Everybody is looking for new, clean energy. Perhaps human energy is the best choice[10]. It isn't bad for the environment and it makes us do exercise!

(1)	دول	(2)	متجددة	(3)	منظمات	(4)	جهاز	(5)	مكالمة هاتفية
(6)	أرضية	(7)	يشحن	(8)	مزدحم	(9)	ساعة الذروة	(10)	اختيار

Lesson (3)



Reading Lesson 3 WB P. 72

Can renewable energy really work?

My school in Kasoa makes its own energy! The school principal[1] put solar panels[2] on my school in 2019. This technology makes electricity for the whole school. I think that it's great because we are showing the whole country, and also the whole world, how renewable energy can really work!

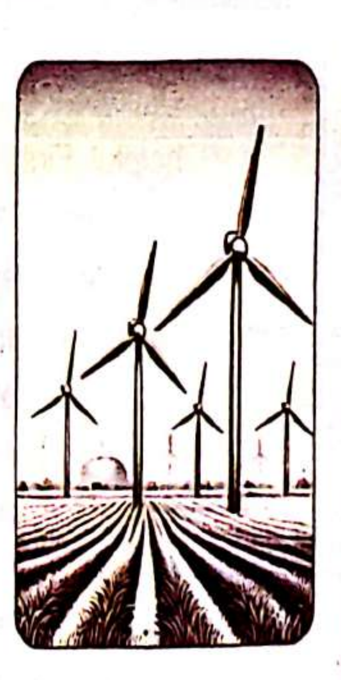
Jojo, 12, Ghana





I live in a small town (Tatamagouche in Canada) where we make our own energy, too! A few years ago, the people in my town decided[3] to put their money together[4] and build a wind farm near our town. On windy[5] days, our wind farm[6] makes half the electricity we need in the town. In the future, it will make more energy and we will sell[7] it. I'm happy because we are only a small town, but we are making a big difference[8] to the world!

Brooke, 13, Canada



(1) مدير المدرسة	(2) ألواح	(3) قرروا	(4) معا
(5) عاصف	(6) محطة رياح	(7) يبيع	(8) فرق - اختلاف



Speaking Lesson 3 WB P. 73



Yaseen wanted a picture for his school project about transportation. He turned on his laptop and opened the internet. He searched for a photo of a helicopter. When he found one he liked, he clicked on it to download it.

Listening Lesson 1 WB P. 70

Dylan : Mom, I need clean clothes for my game tomorrow. I'd like to wash them myself[1]. Can you show me how?

Mom : Of course I can. That would be very helpful. First. You need to get your dirty clothes[2] out of the bag.

Dylan : OK! Here they are. What do I do next?

Mom : Next, you put the clothes inside[3] the washing machine.

Dylan : Right. I've done that. What's this for?

Mom : That's where you put the laundry detergent. Take some from this box. Then put it in here.

Dylan : Is this right?

Mom : Yes. The next thing you do is make sure[4] the washing machine is turned on. After that, choose program C, which washes colored clothes. Finally press[5] "start" and it'll wash your clothes!

Dylan : So, I put the clothes in the machine, add[6] the laundry detergent, and pressed "start" to turn it on. That's easy!

Mom : Good. You can do all the washing next week!

(1) بنفسي	(2) ملابس متسخة	(3) داخل
(4) يتأكد	(5) يضغط	(6) يضيف



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Many of us have different .... that we use to go online and to contact our friends and family.
   a) books b) devices c) machines d) tools
2. All our laptops and smartphones need .... to work.
   a) water b) sun c) energy d) light
3. It's important that we try to use .... energy because it's better for the environment.
   a) new b) renewable c) non-renewable d) old
4. We can .... electricity from wind.
   a) do b) make c) has d) take
5. Scientists are .... machines that use human energy.
   a) doing b) inventing c) playing d) learning
6. You need to .... your cell phone battery.
   a) charge b) cheer c) fill d) put
7. Streets are always busy at ....
   a) morning b) work hour c) rush hour d) night
8. Pollution is .... for the environment.
   a) good b) bad c) nice d) clean
9. To .... means to change and become something different.
   a) make up b) turn on c) turn into d) put away
10. You need to .... on the picture to download it.
    a) lick b) look c) press d) click
11. Can you sweep the ...., please?
    a) floor b) flour c) flower d) follower
12. We have some .... panels on our school.
    a) lunar b) sun c) solar d) electric
13. We can make electricity from wind ....
    a) banks b) farms c) fields d) farmer

14. I use my cell phone to .... my frien[ds]
   a) speak b) talk c) contact d) complet[e]
15. Please turn .... the light when you leave the roo[m]
   a) on b) off c) at d) into
16. I help my mom .... the washin[g]
   a) have b) do c) make d) clean
17. When you freeze water, it turns.. ic[e]
   a) on b) off c) into d) for
18. The word "dirty" is the antonym of ....
   a) clean b) unclean c) muddy d) bad
19. We add the suffix " .... " to get the adjective from "renew"
   a) -ed b) -ing c) -able d) -ly

Speaking Skills

Giving instructions إعطاء التعليمات

عند إعطاء تعليمات لشخص للقيام بعمل نستخدم كلمات وعبارات التسلسل (Sequencing Words) وهي:

First, أولًا	Next, التالي	The next thing الشيء التالي
Then, ثم	Finally, في النهاية	

عند السؤال عن التعليمات نقول:

What do I do next? ماذا أفعل بعد ذلك؟

What's this for? لمَ يستخدم هذا؟

Examples:

a) First, you need to open your internet program.

b) Ah, yes, thank you. What do I do next?

c) The next thing you need to do is to type what you want.

d) Then, choose a photograph.

e) Finally, how do I print it?

Pronunciation

Intonation in questions and sentences النبرة في الأسئلة والجمل

- Intonation means the rise and fall of the voice in speaking.

النبرة (التنغيم) يعني رفع وخفض الصوت في الكلام.

- It shows that you sound interested when you speak.

تبين أنك تبدو "مهتم" عند الكلام.

- If you speak with a flat intonation, you will sound bored.

إذا تكلمت بنبرة صوت مستوية فسوف تبدو وكأنك تشعر بالملل.

Listen to the questions and sentences. Look at the arrows.
Does the intonation rise or fall?

Do you like your new laptop? ↗ What do I do next? ↘

Can I download it? ↗ How do I print it? ↘

Click there, on the picture of a printer. ↘

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our school makes its own ....
   a) money b) energy c) light d) books
2. The school .... put solar panels on our school.
   a) manager b) doctor c) principal d) nurse
3. The technology makes .... for the whole school.
   a) power b) electricity c) cars d) light
4. It's .... energy.
   a) new b) old c) renewable d) bad

2 Complete the following dialog.

Sara : Can you help me to download a picture for my project?

Aya : 1) .... First, you need to open your internet progr

Sara : Ah yes, thank you. 2) ....

Aya : Next, type what you want.

Sara : 3) ....

Aya : You can choose a photograph by clicking on it.

Sara : Finally, how do I download it?

Aya : 4) .... the button "Downloa

Sara : Thank you for your help.

Aya : You're welcome.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

electricity - farm - into - energy - together

I live in a small town (Tatamagouche in Canada) where we make o own 1) ...., too! A few years ago, the people in my town decide to put their money 2) .... and build a wind 3) .... near our town. On windy days, our wind farm makes half the 4) .... we need in the town. In the future, it will make more energy and we will sell it.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He .... on the laptop and opened the interne
   a) put b) turned c) made d) took
2. Put the dirty clothes inside the .... machine
   a) washing b) cooking c) money d) cleaning
3. Can you .... the TV? I want to see the news
   a) turn off b) turn on c) turn in d) turn down

Lesson (3)

4. The boy .... father is a doctor, is my friend.
   a) who b) where c) whose d) which
5. This is the painting .... I like best.
   a) which b) who c) when d) why
6. May is the month .... I was born.
   a) which b) when c) where d) that

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Many countries are trying to make more electricity from wind, water, or the sun. We need to use more renewable energy like this to help the Earth. Some organizations are inventing machines that use human energy. When a person moves, they can make energy. A few years ago, scientists at a university in Canada made a small device to wear on the knee. It uses the energy that your legs make when you walk, and turns it into electricity. A one-minute walk makes electricity for a thirty-minute phone call. With this invention, you'll always have energy for your cell phone battery.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....
   a) knee b) energy c) device d) human
2. We need energy for our ....
   a) batteries b) tables c) animals d) farms

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happens when a person move? ....
4. What examples of renewable energy resources does the text mention?
5. What's the main idea of the text? ....
6. What can a one-minute walk make? ....

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Renewable energy

Lessons (4 & 5)

- CLIL
- Culture
- Writing

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

computer studies	مادة الحاسب الآلي	communication	تواصل / اتصال
online learning	التعلم عن طريق الانترنت	health	صحة
instructions	تعليمات	classmates	زملاء الفصل
design (n/v)	تصميم / يصمم	progress	تقدم
education	التعليم	improve(d)	يحسن
programmers	مبرمجين	blended learning	التعلم المدمج

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

code	شفرة	disabled	معاق
Python	لغة البرمجة بايثون	revision	مراجعة
operating system	نظام التشغيل	mark	يصحح
JavaScript	لغة جافا سكريبت	free time	وقت الفراغ
subject	مادة دراسية	travel	يسافر
foreign	أجنبي	factories	مصانع
schoolwork	الواجب المدرسي	robot	إنسان آلي
grade (v)	يصحح	less	أقل
grades (n)	درجات	microwave	مايكروويف
organize (v)	ينظم	pollution	تلوث
chatrooms	غرف الدردشة	positive	إيجابي

Definitions تعريفات

Computer code	is the language we use to write computer programs.	شفرة الكمبيوتر
A computer programmer	is a person who writes computer codes.	مبرمج كمبيوتر
An app	is the short word for an application – a computer program with a special job.	تطبيق

Lessons (4 & 5)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
grow up	يكبر	grew up	grown up
think	يُفكر	thought	thought
write	يكتب	wrote	written
give	يعطى	gave	given
know	يعرف	knew	known

Important Expressions تعبيرات هامة

brush our teeth	نُنظّف أسناننا بالفرشاة	make the bed	يرتب السرير
web-based programmer	مبرمج على شبكة إلكترونية	look different	يبدو مختلفًا
It's a lot of fun	إنه أمر مُمتع للغاية	look after our planet	نعتني بكوكبنا
make the classes fun	يجعل الحصص ممتعة	improve our lives	نحسن حياتنا

Important Prepositions حروف جر هامة

by itself	بنفسها	in a language	بلغة ....
in person	شخصيًا	for extra revision	للمراجعة الإضافية
with an app	باستخدام تطبيق	get into the app	يدخل إلى التطبيق
at a library	في مكتبة	far away from	بعيد عن
on the farm	في المزرعة	in a few hours	خلال ساعات قليلة

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	my lessons	يدرس	make	a drink	يعد مشروبًا
	exercises	أقوم بحل التدريبات	give	instructions	يعطى تعليمات
	exercise	أقوم بعمل تمرينات رياضية	have	education	ينال تعليمًا

Prefixes & Suffixes المقاطع البادئة واللاحقة

un-	تعطى عكس الصفة	clear	واضح	→	unclear	غير واضح
-er	تكون اسم الوظيفة	program	يبرمج	→	programmer	مبرمج
-ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	instruct	يعلم	→	instructions	تعليمات

Synonyms & Antonyms — مرادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
clear	واضح	obvious	unclear	غير واضح
correct	صحيح	true	false	خطأ
clever	ذكي	smart	stupid	غبي
real	حقيقي	actual	unreal / false	غير حقيقي
different	مختلف	various	same	نفس الشيء

Language Notes

1 prefer / would prefer — يفضل

- **prefer + v-ing**

e.g. We prefer seeing our friends every day.

- **would prefer + to + inf**

e.g. I'd prefer to go to school.

2 either ... or ... — إما ... أو ... (للتخيير)

e.g. Most online classes, either with a teacher or through an app, can be interesting.

e.g. I can go to school either by bus or on foot.

3 both ... and ... — كلاً من ..... و ....

e.g. Teachers make the classes fun both in the classroom and online.

e.g. Both Ahmed and Omar are clever. (لاحظ الفعل بعدها جمع)

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

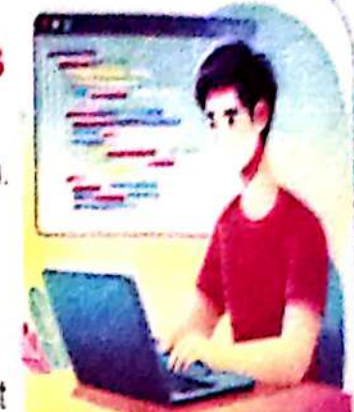
1. Would you prefer .... coffee?
   a) drink b) to drink c) drinking d) to drinking
2. We can learn either at school .... online.
   a) far b) and c) or d) but
3. Both mom and dad .... teachers.
   a) is b) are c) was d) has

Lessons (4 & 5)



Lesson 4 SB P. 112

The language of computers



Computers can't think(1) for themselves, but they are very good at doing what we tell them. Because of this, it's very important that the instructions we give our computers are clear and correct.

When we get up in the morning, we know that we have to do one thing before another. We have breakfast, then we brush our teeth and we go to school. A computer doesn't know how to order(2) activities by itself. You have to tell a computer which thing to do first and which thing to do next or it won't know what to do. Also, you need to write the instructions in a language that the computer can understand.

This computer language is called code. People who write instructions for computers are called computer programmers. It's their job to write instructions using code so that computers work properly(3).

There are many different types(4) of codes, so a good computer programmer learns all the computer languages to know which one is best for(5) each job. So, for example, Python(6) is used for game design, JavaScript is used for web-based programs and C/C++ is used for your computer's operating system(7). Would you like to be a computer programmer?

(1) يفكر	(2) ترتب	(3) بشكل صحيح	(4) أنواع
(5) الأفضل لـ	(6) لغة البايثون	(7) نظام التشغيل	

Read the article again and choose the best answers.

1) What do computers do well?

a) think b) follow instructions c) write instructions

2) What must you tell a computer?

a) what to do things b) when to have breakfast

c) the order of how to do things



Reading Lesson 4 SB P. 113



Lots of people around the world now use computer technology for education. Teachers can give their classes[1] in one place, and the students can be online at home, at a library or somewhere else. Technology and good teaching can help children around the world[2] have a great education.

Alice Springs, Australia



Brian

I live 200 miles from the nearest school, so I can't go into school every day. I do my lessons online, and then I help my parents on the farm. When I finish my schoolwork[3], my teacher can grade[4] it all online with an app, and I can see my grades[5]. It's really lever! Once a week, my teacher organizes an online class with lots of other students in different parts of the country. It is a lot of fun! It would be great to be in a real[6] class with my teacher and classmates[7] though!

Paris, France



Lucy and Kyle

We started having online lessons last year. We listen to our teacher and do the exercises[8] on the computer. Then, we go into online chatrooms to check our work and talk to other students. We prefer[9] seeing our friends every day but learning online is good, too. Our teachers always try and make it interesting, and we enjoy using technology. They always help us when we need it. The best thing is that we can learn about things we are interested in[10].

(1) حصص	(2) حول العالم	(3) الواجب المدرسي	(4) يصحح
(5) درجات	(6) حقيقي	(7) زملاء الفصل	(8) تدريبات
(9) يفضل	(10) يهتم بـ		

Reading

Lesson 4 WB P. 74



Online learning[1] can be a good way to learn. It is becoming very popular[2] all over the world. Many students complete homework or use educational[3] apps online to do extra[4] revision. Teachers can mark homework and check progress[5] either with a teacher or through an app. Most online classes can be as interesting as classes in school. Teachers work very hard to make the classes fun and interesting for their students, both in the classroom and online. However, online learning will probably never be as fun as going to school and meeting your friends and teachers in person[6].

(1) التعليم عبر الإنترنت	(2) شائع	(3) تعليمي
(4) إضافي	(5) تقدم	(6) شخصيا

Lesson 4 WB P. 75

I understand that learning is important.



"I think blended learning[1] is good for everyone. This means you go to school some days and learn at home on others.

You can still talk to your teachers and see your friends. It helps students who can't go to school every day. It is also great for doing homework and makes it more fun."

Omar

"I don't think it's a good idea to learn online. Some students[2] don't have computers or laptops at home, and for people it's too difficult and expensive[3]. I also think it's important to see teachers in the classroom."

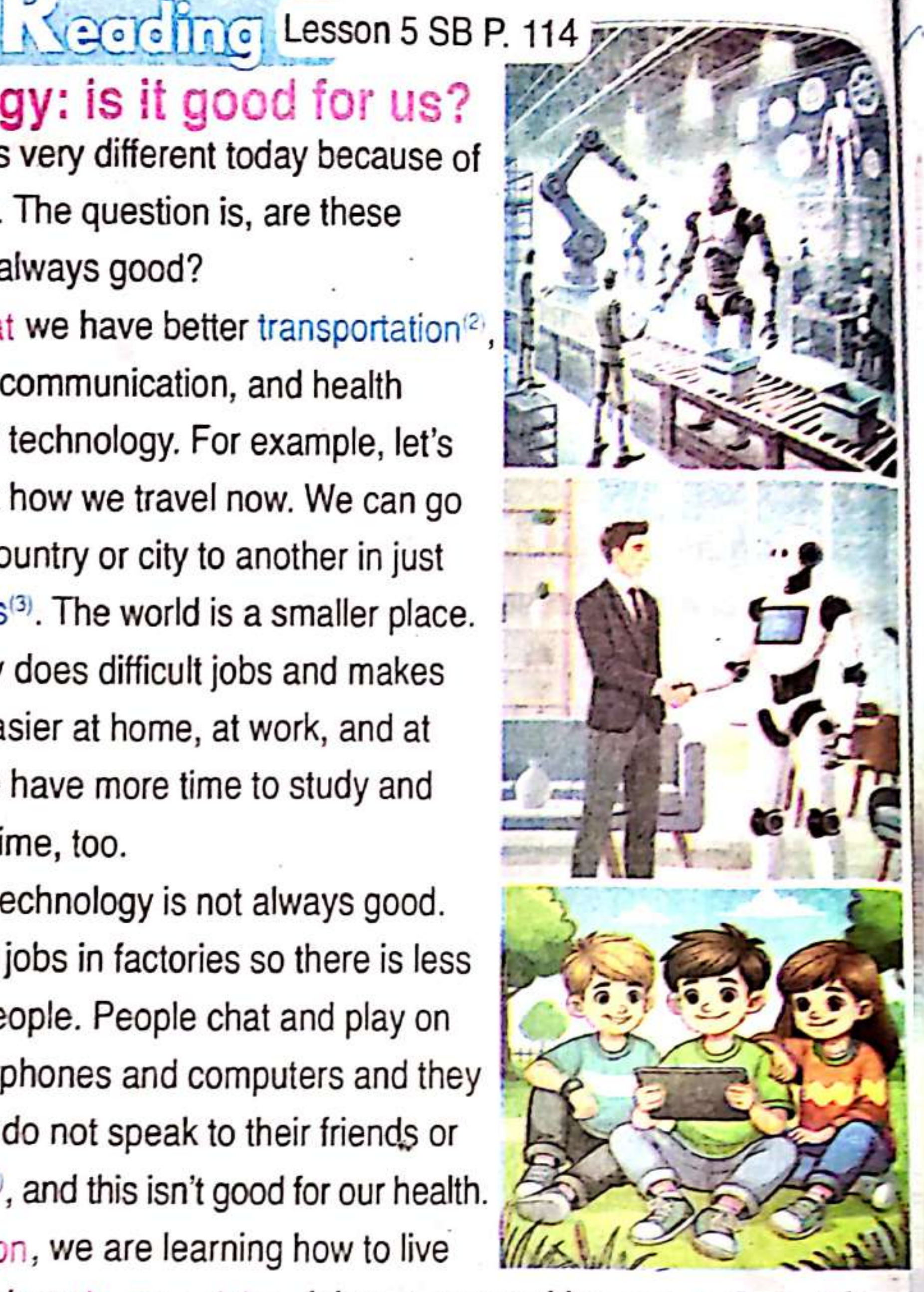
Maleeka



(1) التعليم المدمج	(2) طلاب	(3) غالى

Reading Lesson 5 SB P. 114

Technology: is it good for us?



1. Our world is very different today because of technology. The question is, are these changes[1] always good?

2. It is true that we have better transportation[2], education, communication, and health because of technology. For example, let's think about how we travel now. We can go from one country or city to another in just a few hours[3]. The world is a smaller place. Technology does difficult jobs and makes our lives easier at home, at work, and at school. We have more time to study and more free time, too.

3. However, technology is not always good. Robots do jobs in factories so there is less work for people. People chat and play on their smartphones and computers and they sometimes do not speak to their friends or do exercise[4], and this isn't good for our health.

4. In conclusion, we are learning how to live with technology. In my opinion, it has many positive points[5], but it must not become more important than people.

(1) تغييرات (2) وسائل النقل (3) ساعات قليلة (4) يقوم بتمرينات رياضية (5) نقاط

Read the essay again and answer the questions.

Which paragraph (1-4) ...

a. talks about the negative side of technology?

b. gives the writer's opinion?

c. talks about the positive side of technology?

d. talks about the situation now?



Lesson 5 WB P. 75

Will the world be better in 100 years?

In 100 years, I think that we will be able to use our smartphones to do everything in the home, from turning on the microwave to closing windows. Robots will do lots of jobs for us, like cleaning floors or making beds. This will make our lives easier.

I think it is true that the natural world will look different, too. I believe that there will be less pollution because we will only use renewable energy (for example, solar panels and wind farms). However, I think we need to make these changes soon and I hope that we will look after our planet.

In my opinion, life in the future will be more exciting than now. I think that we will use technology more and it will improve all our lives. However, I also hope that the natural world will be even more beautiful than it is today.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We .... instructions to computers.
   a) have b) give c) talk d) play
2. Computer .... is the language we use to write computer programs.
   a) name b) order c) code d) job
3. .... is used for game design.
   a) Python b) Rhyme c) JavaScript d) Myth
4. Would you like to be a computer .... ?
   a) app b) program c) programmer d) website
5. Online .... is becoming very popular.
   a) learning b) farming c) chatting d) playing
6. Most online classes .... with a teacher or through an app can be interesting.
   a) both b) either c) never d) all

7. I like meeting my friends in ....
   a) personal b) persons c) person d) personally
8. .... is the short word for an application.
   a) Orange b) App c) Apple d) Appearance
9. I think .... learning is good for many students.
   a) offline b) blended c) blender d) mixed
10. New computer technology is used for .... around the world.
   a) playing b) teaching c) education d) money
11. We have online lessons and .... the exercises on the computer.
   a) make b) play c) solve d) do
12. Are you .... in online learning?
   a) interested b) interest c) interesting d) interests
13. We have better communication because of ....
   a) technology b) free time c) travel d) work
14. In my ...., I think technology makes our lives easier.
   a) summary b) opinion c) conclusion d) first
15. I prefer .... my friends at school.
   a) meet b) meeting c) to meet d) met
16. I live far .... from my school.
   a) today b) away c) a way d) weigh
17. Some students are .... so they can't go to school every day.
   a) able b) disable c) disabled d) ability
18. You must .... your teeth every day.
   a) wash b) brush c) take d) push
19. We must look .... our planet.
   a) far b) by c) up d) after
20. The word "clear" is similar in meaning to ....
   a) bad b) obvious c) small d) false
21. We add the suffix ".................... " to get the noun from the verb "instruct".
   a) -al b) -er c) -tion d) -ed

Speaking Skills

Talking about online learning
التحدث عن التعليم عبر الإنترنت

Situation	Reply
What do you think about learning online? ما رأيك في التعلم عبر الإنترنت؟	I think it's good for everyone. أعتقد أنه مفيد للجميع. I don't think it's a good idea. Some students don't have computers at home. لا أعتقد أنه فكرة جيدة. بعض الطلاب ليس لديهم حاسب آلي في البيت.
Would you like to be a computer programmer when you grow up? Why? هل تود أن تكون مبرمج كمبيوتر عندما تكبر؟ لماذا؟	Yes, because my favorite subject is computer studies. نعم، لأن المادة المفضلة لدي هي الحاسب الآلي.
How does technology help us in education? كيف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا في التعليم؟	It helps us have better education. We can learn online at home. تساعدنا في الحصول على تعليم أفضل. يمكننا التعلم عبر الإنترنت في البيت.

Writing Skills

A for-and-against essay
مقال المؤيد والمعارض

Tips for writing: إرشادات للكتابة

1. Use formal language and full sentences joined with but, so and because.
استخدم لغة رسمية وجملًا كاملة مربوطة بـ (ولكن ، لذلك ، لأن).
2. Make the topic of the essay very clear in the introduction.
اجعل موضوع المقال واضحًا جدًا في المقدمة.
3. Include facts in your essay to make your ideas stronger.
ضمن مقالك حقائق لجعل الأفكار أقوى.
4. Make sure your conclusion reminds readers of the important points.
تأكد أن الخاتمة تذكر القارئ بالنقاط الهامة في المقال.
5. Give an opinion in the conclusion using the information from the main essay. Are you 'for' or 'against'?
قدم رأيًا في الخاتمة باستخدام المعلومات الواردة في المقال الرئيسي. هل أنت «مع» أم «ضد» ؟
6. You can use these phrases in your essay. يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات في مقالك.

- Many people think / say / believe that...
- It is true that...
- For this reason,...
- However,...
- In my opinion,...
- In conclusion,...



Practice

Write an essay of (100 - 120) words on:

Will the world be worse in 20 years?

Think about how our lives and the natural world will be different.

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Radwa's favorite subject is ....
   a) computer studies b) Arabic c) English d) art
2. They are learning to write computer ....
   a) name b) school c) language d) code
3. She made her own .... with a funny ca[t]
   a) book b) novel c) picture d) story
4. When she grows up, she will design her own ....
   a) apps b) codes c) stories d) caps

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

classes - technology - in - at - education

Lots of people around the world now use computer 1) .... for education. Teachers can give their 2) .... in one place, and the students can be online at home, 3) .... a library or somewhere else. Technology and good teaching can help children around the world have a great 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Online learning can be a good way to learn. It is becoming very popular all over the world. Many students use educational apps online to complete homework or for extra revision. Teachers can go into the apps and mark homework and check progress. Most online classes, either with a teacher or through an app, can be as interesting as classes in school. Teachers work



very hard to make the classes fun and interesting for their students, both in the classroom and online! However, online learning will probably never be as fun as going to school and meeting your friends and teachers in person!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "popular" means ....
   a) small b) famous c) usual d) short
2. Teachers can .... homework on the app.
   a) do b) make c) mark d) take

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Can online learning help us to learn? ....
4. What's the main idea of the text? ....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "their" refer to? ....
6. Which one do you think is more interesting, online classes or going to school? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When I finish my schoolwork, my teacher can .... it online.
   a) take b) grade c) solve d) listen
2. Computers use a language called ....
   a) art b) number c) code d) dot
3. We can use the internet for ....
   a) education b) running c) swimming d) protection
4. This is a taxi .... doesn't need a driver.
   a) who b) which c) whose d) what
5. Ahmed, ... sits next to me in class, is clever.
   a) which b) that c) who d) when
6. This is the park .... we spend time with our friends.
   a) which b) who c) where d) when

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Are you for or against blended learning?

Writing Corner

Using technology carefully

Technology can be exciting and fun, but we must remember to use it carefully. Today's modern age is the best time when we can make use of modern technology. We all enjoy using social media which is a popular technology for sharing information and photos with friends. But people who post on social media must be careful about what they share. Photographs stay on the internet for a very long time. In the future, when you want to get into university or get a job, other people can look at your social media to learn about you. What do you want them to see?

Online learning

Online learning can be a good way to learn. It is becoming very popular all over the world. Many students complete homework or use educational apps online to do extra revision. Teachers can mark homework and check progress either with a teacher or through an app. Most online classes can be as interesting as classes in school. Teachers work very hard to make the classes fun and interesting for their students, both in the classroom and online. However, online learning will probably never be as fun as going to school and meeting your friends and teachers in person.

Is technology good for us?

Technology can be fun and exciting. Our world is different today because of technology. It's true that life is easier at home, at work and at school. Technology does difficult jobs.

However, technology can be bad for the environment. People spend more time on their smartphones and they sometimes don't speak to their friends or do exercise.

In conclusion, I want to finish by saying that I think technology will make the world a better place. In my opinion, we should be careful about how children use technology.

Dictation on Unit (10)

Lessons (1 & 2)

تطبيقات	....	يحصل على معلومات	....
أجهزة	....	يطير المسيرات	....
سماعات الرأس	....	يتواصل بصريًا	....
شاشة	....	يثق	....
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	....	وسائل النقل	....
موقع إلكتروني	....	يستفيد من	....
عنوان	....	العصر الحديث	....
ينشر على وسائل التواصل	....	يلتحق بالجامعة	....

Lesson (3)

طاقة بشرية	....	أرضية	....
طاقة متجددة	....	يشحن	....
محطات الرياح	....	يتحول إلى	....
ساعة الذروة	....	ألواح شمسية	....
مكالمة هاتفية	....	يولد كهرباء	....
ينقر على	....	يقوم بالغسيل	....
يقود سيارة	....	يتصل بالأصدقاء	....

Lessons (4&5)

مادة الحاسب الآلي	....	مبرمج كمبيوتر	....
التعلم عبر الإنترنت	....	التعليم المدمج	....
تعليمات	....	زملاء الفصل	....
معاق	....	شفرة	....
درجات	....	نظام التشغيل	....
إنسان آلي	....	التعليم	....
شخصيًا	....	يبدو مختلفًا	....



Review Based On Unit (10)

Vocabulary

technology	التكنولوجيا	wind farms	محطات الرياح
devices	الأجهزة	turn into	يتحول إلى
apps	التطبيقات	at rush hour	في ساعة الذروة
headphones	سماعات الرأس	phone call	مكالمة هاتفية
screens	الشاشات	do the washing	يغسل الملابس
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	make electricity	ينتج الكهرباء
eye-contact	تواصل بصري	computer studies	دراسات الكمبيوتر
modern age	العصر الحديث	online learning	التعلم الإلكتروني
drones	طائرات بدون طيار	instructions	تعليمات
transportation	المواصلات	grades	درجات
human energy	طاقة بشرية	computer code	شفرة الكمبيوتر
solar panels	الألواح الشمسية	computer programmer	مبرمج الكمبيوتر
charge a battery	يشحن البطارية	in person	شخصيًا
floor	طابق - أرضية	education	التعليم
renewable	متجدد	blended learning	التعلم المدمج

Grammar

Relative clauses

- The city where I live is on the coast.
- My sister, who lives in London, is younger than me.
- The park, where she played as a child is now a housing development.
- Next summer, when I go to Australia, I will learn to surf.
- This is the woman whose son is my friend.

Speaking

Giving instructions

- First, open your internet program.
- Next, type what you want.
- Then, choose a photograph.
- Finally, click on the button "Print".

Test Based On Unit (10)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This is a school in ....
   a) Egypt b) England c) France d) Italy
2. Students walk .... from class to class.
   a) slowly b) quickly c) happily d) quick
3. There is a special .... to make electricity.
   a) floor b) door c) plant d) roof
4. The energy they make in one year can charge .... cell phones.
   a) 700 b) 600 c) 850 d) 950

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Computers can fly ....
   a) cars b) drones c) buses d) bikes
2. We can listen to music with ....
   a) apps b) screens c) headphones d) pens
3. You can .... on the picture to download it.
   a) tap b) brush c) click d) turn

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

electricity - panels - player - renewable - principal

My school in Kasaa makes its own energy. The school 1)..................... put solar 2)..................... on my school in 2019. The technology makes 3)..................... for the whole school. I think it's great because we are showing the whole country how 4)..................... energy can really work.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I live 200 miles from the nearest school, so I can't go to school every day. I do my lessons online, and then I help my parents on the farm. When I finish my schoolwork, my teacher can grade it all online with an app, and I can see my grades. It's really clever!

Once a week, my teacher organizes an online class with lots of other students in different parts of the country. It is a lot of fun! It would be great to be in a real class with my teacher and classmates though!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The best title for the text is ....

   a) going to school b) online learning c) farms d) schoolwork

2. The .... can grade the schoolwork online.

   a) writer b) principal c) students d) teacher

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why can't the writer go to school?

....

4. What does the writer do after school?

....

5. How often does the teacher organize an online class?

....

6. Does the writer like online classes more than real classes?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The jacket, ... I bought yesterday, is new.

   a) who b) which c) that d) where

2. Spring is the season .... the weather is best.

   a) who b) where c) when d) which

3. Ahmed, ... car is red, is a doctor.

   a) whose b) who c) which d) where

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. My grandmother, ... (which) lives in Alexandria, sent me a present.
2. The bag, ... (who) you gave me, is nice.
3. Mr. Sam, ... (who) house is in Cairo, is a good teacher.
4. That's the club .... (when) we play football.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Tamer is talking to Hadi about his new laptop.

Tamer : Hello Hadi. What is this?

Hadi : Hello Tamer. 1) ....

Tamer : 2) .... ?

Hadi : My dad bought it for my birthday.

Tamer : Do you like technology?

Hadi : 3) ....

Tamer : 4) .... ?

Hadi : I use it to get information and to share things with my friends.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Technology

....

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "He's a good man and a brave soldier."
2. "I will punish you both."
3. "Your Majesty. I'm so pleased to see you."

a- The judge
b- Tom
c. Lord Hertford

B Answer the following questions:

1. What was Edward accused of?

....

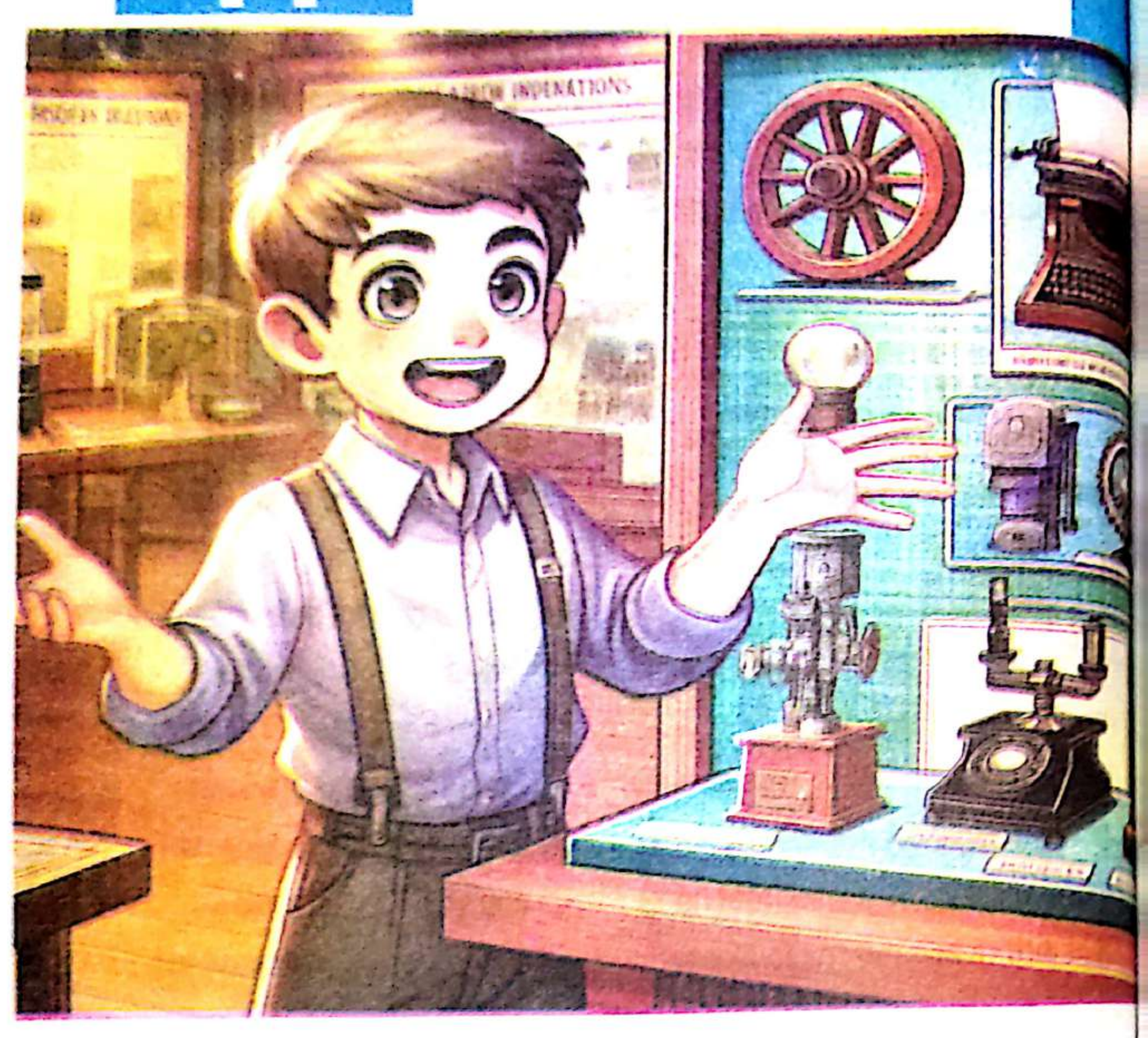
2. Was Edward a good king? Why?

....

3. Who put Miles in the stocks?

....

Unit 11 Inventions



Unit Objectives

Reading an article about inventions in communication; a magazine article about inventions from nature

Listening advertisements about new gadgets

Speaking give a presentation about smartphones

Writing an article

Language use the passive

Lessons (1 & 2)

- Vocabulary and speaking
- Reading
- Grammar
- Listening

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

inventions	اختراعات	wheel	عجلة
digital camera	كاميرا رقمية	invent(ed)	يخترع
drone	مسيرة / طائرة بدون طيار	problem	مشكلة
engine	محرك	solution	حل
fridge	ثلاجة	research	بحث
telephone	هاتف / تليفون	gadget	أداة
VR headset	سماعة الواقع الافتراضي	wireless	لاسلكي
electric skateboard	لوح التزلج الكهربائي	smartwatch	ساعة ذكية
radio	الراديو	TV	تليفزيون
telegraph	آلة التلغراف	communication	الاتصالات

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

mail(ed)	بريد / يرسل بالبريد	letter	خطاب
deliver(ed)	يسلم / يوصل	message	رسالة
post	البريد	station	محطة
parcels	طرود	communicate	يتواصل
fitness	اللياقة البدنية	Persia	بلاد فارس
advertisement	إعلان		

When were they invented? متى تم اختراعها؟

The telegraph was invented in the 1830s and 1840s.

The computer was invented in 1822.

The radio was invented in 1895.

The TV was invented in 1927.

The first email was sent in 1971.



Definitions تعريفات

Word	Definition	Arabic
fridge	You use this in a kitchen to keep food cold.	ثلاجة
drone	This can fly in the air. You can use it to look at things from above	مسيرة
	If you don't have a smartphone, you can use this to take photographs	كاميرا رقمية
	This is a very old and very important invention. You see these everywhere on cars and bikes	العجلة
	You can use this to talk to someone who is in a different place	التليفون
	You will find this in many things that we use a lot, like cars, planes, and boats. It makes things move	محرك
	something that is difficult or makes you worry	مشكلة
	the information you find out when you study something	بحث
	to make something new	يخترع
	an answer to a question or something that is difficult	حل
	a small machine or invention that does something useful	أداة
	this describes technology that uses radio waves instead of electricity and so it does not need wires (long thin pieces of metal)	لاسلكي
	to communicate or share information with people you know	يبقى على اتصال

Lessons (1 & 2)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
send	يرسل	sent	sent
make	يجعل / يصنع	made	made
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept

Important Expressions تعبيرات هامة

keep food cold	يحافظ على برودة الطعام	buy ...... online	يشترى ..... عبر الإنترنت
keep in touch	يبقى على اتصال	the latest way	أحدث طريقة
a solution to the problem	حل المشكلة	play music	يشغل موسيقى

Important Prepositions حروف جر هامة

look up	يبحث عن معنى كلمة	for example	على سبيل المثال
on horses	على الخيول	over time	بمرور الوقت
across Persia	عبر بلاد فارس		

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

mail	a letter	يرسل خطابًا بالبريد	deliver	parcels	يوصل الطرود
make	a video call	يجري مكالمة فيديو	do	research	يقوم ببحث

Synonyms & Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
quickly	بسرعة	fast		slowly	ببطء
deliver	يسلم / يوصل	give		receive	يستلم
mail	يرسل بالبريد / بريد	post		———	
useful	مفيد	helpful		useless	غير مفيد

Suffixes اللواحق

تحول الفعل إلى اسم	invent	يخترع	→	invention	اختراع
	communicate	يتواصل	→	communication	اتصال
تكون الصفة من الفعل	use	يستخدم	→	useful	مفيد



Language Notes

1 invent / discover

- **invent (v)** يخترع (شئ جديد لم يكن موجودًا)

e.g. The radio was invented in 1895.

- **discover (v)** يكتشف (شئ كان موجود لكن لا يعلم به الناس)

e.g. Ahmed Zewail discovered the femto second.

2 mail / email

- **mail (n / v)** البريد / يرسل بالبريد

e.g. Have you ever mailed a letter?

- **email (n)** البريد الإلكتروني (عن طريق الإنترنت)

e.g. I sent an email to my friend with my smartphone.

Test Yourself

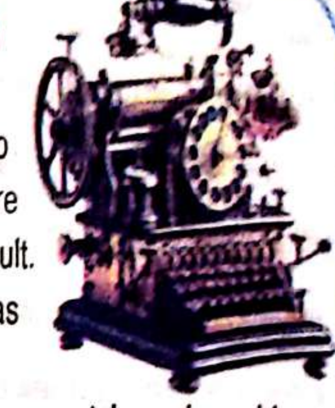
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Who was the TV .... by?
   a) discovered b) invented c) done d) invited
2. Do you know who .... America?
   a) discovered b) invented c) made d) did
3. People used the .... to send letters.
   a) email b) mail c) message d) telegraph



Lesson 1 SB P. 117

Keeping in touch



telegraph machine

How do you keep in touch with your friends and family? It's very easy now to send a message(1) to your friends or make a video call. Many emails are sent every day. In the past, it was a lot more difficult. People used the mail to send letters. The mail was first invented(2) in Persia (the country that is now called Iraq). Letters were carried by men on horses. They had to ride a long way across Persia to deliver the letters(3).

The telegraph was invented in the 1830s, as a solution(4) to the problem of how long letters took to arrive. It used a special machine to send messages to another telegraph station quickly. And, of course, when the telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876, we could speak to people all over the world.

Now that we use emails and messages to communicate, some people think we don't need the mail(5) anymore. But because many of us buy things online, the post is still important as parcels(6) are delivered to our homes. Some parcels are even delivered by drones(7) now.

(1) رسالة	(2) تم اختراعه	(3) يوصل / يسلم الرسائل	(4) حل
(5) البريد	(6) طرود	(7) مسيرات	

Reading Skills

Using a dictionary

استخدام القاموس

- When you are reading, try to understand the main ideas of a text without looking up words in a dictionary.

عندما تقرأ، حاول أن تفهم الأفكار الرئيسية للنص دون أن تبحث عن الكلمات في القاموس.

- After you have finished reading the text, go back and look up any new words. Note these in your notebook to build your vocabulary.

بعد الانتهاء من قراءة النص، ارجع وابحث عن أي كلمات جديدة. سجل هذه الكلمات في دفتر ملاحظاتك لتكوين مفرداتك.

- Read the article again. Look up any words you don't know in a dictionary.

اقرأ المقال مرة ثانية. ابحث عن أي كلمات لا تعرفها في القاموس.

Reading Lesson 1 WB P. 77

Why do people make inventions? Sometimes, there is a problem. We want to do something, and we can't. For example, in the past, it was difficult[1] to talk to people who were far away[2]. The telephone was a solution to this problem. So, scientists invent things to make our lives easier. It can take a long time to make a new invention perfect, because it's important to find out[3] the best way to make something. The research that people do is very useful[4].

(1) صعب	(2) بعيد	(3) يكتشف	(4) مفيد

Reading Lesson 2 WB P. 78

The car is a very important invention because it changed[1] how we travel. Before it was invented, people traveled[2] on foot or on horses. Lots of trips were made by bicycle, too.

These were all good types of transportation[3], but it was difficult to travel a long way. The car made it easier to go on long trips. Today, cars are used by people all over the world. It's hard to think of our lives without[4] them. But cars have changed a lot over time. In the past, engines[5] were invented so that cars could move. But lots of modern cars that are sold today have electric batteries[6].

(1) غيرت	(2) سافروا	(3) وسائل النقل
(4) بدون	(5) محركات	(6) بطاريات

Listening Skills

Understanding adverts

فهم الإعلانات

Adverts always make things sound great. This is usually because they want you to buy something or visit somewhere. They often talk about how the thing they are advertising is the best, or is really new. Here are some examples from the radio advertisement.

تجعل الإعلانات الأشياء تبدو رائعة دائمًا. وهذا يحدث عادةً لأنهم يريدون منك شراء شيء ما أو زيارة مكان ما. و غالبًا ما يتحدثون عن أن الشيء الذي يعلنون عنه هو الأفضل أو أنه جديد حقًا.

إليك بعض الأمثلة من الإعلان الإذاعي:

FitWatch helps you do all of this!
Start improving your fitness today with FitWatch!

EarNow is the newest invention in sound.



MagicNote is the latest way to write information.



Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use the .... to keep food cold.
   a) drone b) fridge c) smartphone d) bike
2. A / An .... can fly in the air.
   a) wheel b) smartwatch c) camera d) drone
3. Scientists .... things to make our lives easier.
   a) invite b) play c) invent d) make
4. Have you ever .... a letter?
   a) done b) drawn c) mailed d) passed
5. You should .... in touch with your friends and family.
   a) be b) ke c) go d) make



6. It's very easy now to .... a message to your friends.
   a) get   b) do   c) send   d) play
7. We use emails and messages to ....
   a) communicate   b) correct   c) study   d) sing
8. I use my smartphone to .... a video call.
   a) go   b) see   c) make   d) write
9. The mail was first .... in Persia.
   a) invented   b) invited   c) discovered   d) done
10. We must find a .... to the problem of pollution.
   a) solution   b) question   c) solve   d) population
11. The .... was invented in the 1830s.
   a) computer   b) telegraph   c) radio   d) metro
12. Some parcels are .... by drones.
   a) flown   b) done   c) delivered   d) bought
13. A / An .... is a small machine or invention that does something useful.
   a) smartwatch   b) train   c) gadget   d) player
14. .... were invented so that cars could move.
   a) Cameras   b) Engines   c) Drones   d) Fridges
15. Scientists are .... some research on drones.
   a) making   b) playing   c) doing   d) seeing
16. Some young people use smartphones to .... music.
   a) play   b) draw   c) listen   d) paint
17. .... are used to take photographs.
   a) Digital cameras   b) Drones   c) Wheels   d) Engines
18. Alexander Graham Bell invented the .... in 1876.
   a) Computer   b) wheel   c) telephone   d) drone
19. The word "deliver" is the opposite of ....
   a) give   b) have   c) receive   d) make
20. We use the suffix .... to get the adjective from the verb "use".
   a) -ing   b) -ful   c) -al   d) -er

Lessons (1 & 2)

Speaking Skills

Talking about inventions — الحديث عن الإختراعات

Situation	Reply
Which invention do you think is the most important? في رأيك، ما هو أهم اختراع؟	I think the smartphone is the most important. أعتقد أن الهاتف الذكي هو اهم اختراع.
How can inventions help us? كيف يمكن ان تساعدنا الإختراعات؟	They make our lives easier. تجعل حياتنا اسهل.
How often do you use your smartphone? كم مرة تستخدم هاتفك الذكي؟	I use it every day. أستخدمه كل يوم.

Writing Skills

Writing about inventions in Communication — الكتابة عن الاختراعات في التواصل

Inventions have made it easier to keep in touch with our friends and family.

لقد جعلت الاختراعات من السهل البقاء على اتصال مع أصدقائنا وعائلتنا.

We can send a message or make a video call with smartphones.

يمكننا إرسال رسالة أو إجراء مكالمة فيديو باستخدام الهواتف الذكية.

The telegraph was invented in 1830s.

تم اختراع التلغراف في ثلاثينيات القرن التاسع عشر.

When the telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876, we couid speak to people all over the world.

عندما اخترع ألكسندر جراهام بيل الهاتف في عام 1876، أصبح بإمكاننا التحدث إلى الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم.

Modern technology makes it easier to communicate with people.

تسهل التكنولوجيا الحديثة التواصل مع الناس.



The Passive المبنى للمجهول

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the passive form when the action is more important than who does it.**

نستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول عندما يكون الفعل أكثر أهمية من الفاعل.

Form التكوين

Object المفعول + verb to be + Past participle (P.P) التصريف الثالث

e.g. Many emails are sent every day.

Note

- **We form the past participle of regular verbs by adding (-ed) to the verb.**

نكون اسم المفعول (التصريف الثالث) للفعل المنتظم بإضافة (ed-).

invent → invented

There are irregular verbs:

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة (تحفظ)

do → done take → taken

- **If we want to say who does the action, we use (by + subject) at the end of the sentence.**

إذا أردنا أن نذكر الشخص الذي يقوم بالفعل، نستخدم (الفاعل + by) في نهاية الجملة.

e.g. The telephone was invented by Graham Bell.

Simple Present المضارع البسيط

	Active المبني للمعلوم	Passive المبني للمجهول
الإثبات	**Subj. + inf. / inf. + s**	**Object + (is / are) + P.P**
	They make cheese in France.	Cheese is made in France.
النفي	**Subj. + don't / doesn't + inf.**	**Object + isn't / aren't + P.P**
	Sam doesn't use the computer.	The computer isn't used by Sam.
السؤال	**Do / Does + sub. + inf. ...?**	**Is / Are + obj. + P.P ...?**
	Do they teach German at your school?	Is German taught at your school?
	Yes, they do. / No, they don't.	Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.
	Wh- + do / does + subj. + inf.?	**Wh- + (is / are) + obj. + P.P?**
	Where do they make smartwatches?	Where are smartwatches made?

Simple Past الماضي البسيط

	Active المبني للمعلوم	Passive المبني للمجهول
الإثبات	◆ **verb + ed** ◆ **Irregular verbs**	**Obj. + was / were + P.P**
	Mom cooked lunch.	Lunch was cooked by Mom.
النفي	**Subj. + didn't + inf.**	**Obj. + wasn't / weren't + P.P**
	Mr. Green didn't paint the house.	The house wasn't painted by Mr. Green.
السؤال	**Did + subj. + inf. ?**	**Was / Were + obj. + P.P ?**
	Did Sam do homework?	Was homework done by Sam?
	Yes, he did.	Yes, it was.
	No, he didn't.	No, it wasn't.
	Wh- + did + subj. + inf. ?	**Wh- + was / were + obj. + P.P?**
	When did they invent the car?	When was the car invented?

Practice on Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Many emails .... every day.
   a) send b) are sent c) sent d) were sent
2. Letters .... by men on horses.
   a) carry b) were carried c) was carried d) are carrying
3. The mail was first .... in Persia.
   a) invent b) inventing c) invented d) invents
4. Parcels .... to our homes every day.
   a) deliver b) are delivered c) was delivered d) delivering
5. Smartphones .... to send messages.
   a) used b) is used c) are used d) are using
6. .... music taught at your school?
   a) Are b) Do c) Does d) Is
7. Oranges .... in the Middle East.
   a) grows b) are grown c) is grown d) grew
8. Lots of good books .... online.
   a) sold b) are sold c) sell d) was sold
9. German .... in many countries.
   a) speaking b) isn't spoken c) speak d) spoke
10. The iPhone .... by Jony Ive.
    a) design b) designed c) is designed d) was designed
11. When .... these new buildings built?
    a) do b) did c) was d) were
12. .... the wheel invented a long time ago?
    a) Did b) Was c) Were d) Does
13. The computer .... in 1822.
    a) is invented b) invented c) was invented d) invents

14. Olives .... in Germany.
    a) grows   b) aren't grown   c) isn't grown   d) hasn't

15. That book .... two years ago.
    a) is written   b) writes   c) was written   d) wrote

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. The telegram .... (invent) in the 1830s.
2. The first email .... (send) in 1971.
3. Lots of food .... (make) for the party, but no one ate it.
4. The parcels .... (deliver) this morning.
5. Smartphones .... (use) by many people every day.
6. Smartwatches .... (make) in China.
7. Fantastic cakes .... (sell) in this café.
8. English .... (speak) all over the world.
9. The radio .... (is invented) in 1895.
10. .... (Do) pizza first made in Italy?
11. People .... (use) the mail to send letters in the past.
12. This cheese .... (make) in France.
13. Workers .... (are cleaned) the classrooms at the end of the day.
14. Cricket .... (not play) in many countries.
15. My room wasn't cleaned .... (with) my sister.

3 Rewrite the sentences in the passive.

1. People invented the smartwatch about 30 years ago.
....
2. Now, lots of people wear smartwatches.
....
3. Farmers grow oranges in Egypt.
....
4. I did my homework yesterday.
....
5. Where did they make this car?
....

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... is a very important invention.
   a) train   b) car   c) plane   d) bus
2. In the past, people traveled on foot or on ....
   a) planes   b) donkeys   c) horses   d) bikes
3. The car is a kind of ....
   a) communication   b) food   c) transportation   d) learning
4. Cars move with ....
   a) engines   b) wings   c) water   d) bikes

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

invention - problem - research - solution - discover

Why do people make inventions? Sometimes, there is a 1).................. We want to do something, and we can't. For example, in the past, it was difficult to talk to people who were far away. The telephone was a 2) .... to this problem. So, scientists invent things to make our lives easier. It can take a long time to make a new 3).................. perfect, because it is important to find out the best way to make something. The 4) .... that people do is very useful.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There is always a .... to any problem..
   a) reply   b) solution   c) pollution   d) question
2. We can use a .... to look at things from above.
   a) camera   b) drone   c) telephone   d) message
3. Modern inventions help us keep .... with other people.
   a) off touch   b) by touch   c) in touch   d) in sight
4. Cricket .... in many countries.
   a) plays   b) played   c) is played   d) is playing
5. .... science taught in all schools?
   a) Do   b) Is   c) Does   d) Are

6. Who was the computer made .... ?
   a) with   b) by   c) at   d) in

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The telegraph was invented in the 1830s, as a solution to the problem of how long letters took to arrive. It used a special machine to send messages to another telegraph station quickly. And, of course, when the telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876, we could speak to people all over the world. Now that we use emails and messages to communicate, some people think we don't need the mail anymore. But because many of us buy things online, the post is still important as parcels are delivered to our homes. Some parcels are even delivered by drones now.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "post" is the synonym of ....
   a) email   b) travel   c) message   d) mail
2. The telegraph was invented in the ....
   a) 1820s   b) 1830s   c) 1850s   d) 2020s

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text? ....
4. Who was the telephone invented by? ....
5. How could the telephone help us? ....
6. Do you think we don't need the mail anymore? Why? ....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Lots of books .... (sell) online.
2. Coffee is .... (grow) in hot countries.
3. This story .... (write) two years ago.
4. When .... (the wheel invent)?

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

An invention

Lesson (3)

- Reading
- Speaking
- Pronunciation

Key vocabulary

develop(ed)	يطور	solve(d)	يحل
idea	فكرة	notice(d)	يلاحظ
laboratory	معمل	Velcro	شرطة الفيلكرو اللاصقة
design(ed)	يصمم	sonar machine	جهاز السونار
bullet train	القطار السريع	flippers	زعانف (الغطس)

Extra vocabulary

nature	الطبيعة	sound	صوت
inventor	مخترع	noises	أصوات مزعجة / ضجيج
hook	خطاف / سنارة	pool	حمام سباحة
journey	رحلة طويلة	feet	أقدام
research	بحث	tunnel	نفق
probably	على الأرجح / ربما	kingfisher	طائر الرفراف
underwater	تحت الماء	beak	منقار
presentation	عرض	history	التاريخ
noisy	مزعج	geography	الجغرافيا

Definitions تعريفات

design (v)	to invent and make something new
develop (v)	to make something and change it over time
idea	a thought or plan, especially about something new
laboratory	a place where scientists work
solve (v)	to find a solution to a problem
notice (v)	to look at something and learn new things
velcro	fastening material consisting of two strips that stick together

Lesson (3)

sonar machine	a system using sound waves to detect objects underwater
flippers	rubber fins worn on the foot by a swimmer
bullet train	a high-speed train in Japan

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
find	يجد	found	found
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
come	يأتي	came	come
get	يحصل على	got	got
catch	يصطاد (سمك)	caught	caught

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

make	things	يصنع أشياء	**solve**	problems	يحل مشكلات
	noises	يصدر أصوات مزعجة	**play**	games	يلعب ألعابًا
give	a presentation	يقدم عرض	**catch**	fish	يصطاد أسماك

Important Expressions تعبيرات هامة

teach us how to...	يعلمنا كيف	in a similar way to...	بطريقة مشابهة لـ ....
keep... safe	يحافظ على سلامة	get an idea for	يحصل على فكرة عن
in the same way	بنفس الطريقة	per hour	في الساعة

Important Prepositions حروف جر هامة

in fact	في الحقيقة	Thank you for...	شكراً لك على...
on journeys	في رحلات	come out of	يخرج من
come back	يعود / يرجع	at the front	في المقدمة
find out	يكتشف	by road	برًا



Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
outside	بالخارج	out		inside	بالداخل
lastly	أخيرا	finally		firstly	أولا
thin	نحيف / رفيع	slim		fat	سمين
easy	سهل	simple		hard / difficult	صعب
noisy	مزعج	loud		quiet	هادئ
strong	قوى	powerful		weak	ضعيف

Prefixes & Suffixes

-er	تكون اسم الوظيفة	engine	محرك	→	engineer	مهندس
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	quick	سريع	→	quickly	بسرعة
-y	تكون الصفة من الاسم	noise	ضوضاء	→	noisy	مزعج
dis-	تعطى العكس	agree	يوافق	→	disagree	يعارض - لا يوافق

Language Notes

1 clothes - cloth

- **clothes** ملابس (اسم جمع)

e.g. My clothes are on the bed.

- **cloth** قماش (اسم لا يعد)

e.g. We use cloth to make clothes.

2 per hour = every hour في الساعة / لكل ساعة

e.g. The bullet train can travel up to 200 miles per hour.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We got a new washing machine to wash our ....
   a) cloth b) clothes c) clothing d) to clothes
2. My car can run at the speed of 120 km .... hour.
   a) per b) poor c) on d) bar

Lesson (3)



Reading

Lesson 3 SB P. 120

Nature's inventions



You might think that inventors always work in laboratories; doing research and solving problems. In fact[1], a lot of their ideas come from nature. Animals and plants are amazing, and they can teach us how to make things that make our lives better.

One example[2] is Velcro, a simple thing that you probably use every day to keep things together, and is often used on shoes. It was designed in 1948 by George de Mestral. He noticed how a plant used little[3] "hooks" to stay on his clothes when he walked outside[4]. He studied the plant and made Velcro to work in the same way[5].

Another example is sonar[6] machines, which help us to find things underwater and keep ships safe on long journeys[7]. Sonar machines use sound in a similar way to dolphins, by making noises[8] and listening for the sound that comes back. This tells them where to find something.

Lastly, have you ever used flippers in the sea or a swimming pool? They help us to swim faster and more easily. The idea for flippers came from nature. Scientists studied animals and birds, like ducks, whose feet[9] help them to move quickly in water.

So, next time you're outside, look at the nature around you[10]! You could get an idea for a new invention!

(1) في الحقيقة	(2) مثال	(3) صغير	(4) بالخارج	(5) طريقة
(6) سونار	(7) رحلات	(8) يصدر أصوات	(9) أقدام	(10) حولك

Read the article again. What is the main idea?

a. It is difficult to think of good ideas in a laboratory.

b. Inventors can get ideas by studying plants and animals.

c. Inventors often study plants before they make something.

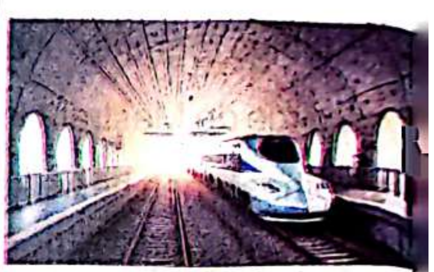


Reading Lesson 3 WB P. 79

Solving a noisy problem


bullet train

The bullet train is a special[1] train in Japan that can travel up to 200 miles per hour. It is a very fast way to travel! But the engineers who developed[2] it found that it made a loud noise[3] when it came out of a tunnel. This was a problem, and the engineers[4] found a solution[5] in nature.


tunnel

The kingfisher[6] is a bird that can fly very fast, but when it goes into water to catch[7] fish, the water doesn't move very much. The engineers thought this was because of the kingfisher's beak[8].



kingfisher

It is very long and thin, and it goes into[9] the water first.

The bullet train was designed to have a long, thin part at the front, like a kingfisher's beak. Now, it can travel very quickly, and it isn't noisy[10].

(1)	مميز	(2)	طور	(3)	ضوضاء	(4)	مهندسون	(5)	حل
(6)	طائر الرفراف	(7)	يصطاد	(8)	منقار	(9)	يدخل	(10)	مزعج

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A/An .... is a place where scientists work.
   a) school b) laboratory c) studio d) shop
2. Scientists always .... research on things.
   a) make b) go c) do d) take
3. A lot of .... come from nature.
   a) books b) ideas c) plants d) opinions
4. We should .... our planet safe.
   a) keep b) deep c) save d) cause
5. When you're ...., look at the nature around you.
   a) inside b) beside c) outside d) behind
6. .... means to invent and make something new.
   a) Design b) Develop c) Discover d) Draw
7. A .... can help us find things underwater.
   a) sonar machine b) train c) ship d) wheel
8. Ducks' .... help them to move quickly in water.
   a) wings b) feet c) legs d) feathers
9. Scientists help to .... problems in our world..
   a) make b) take c) solve d) get
10. The bullet train can travel up to 200 miles .... hour.
    a) in b) on c) at d) per
11. The kingfisher has a long thin ....
    a) mouth b) beak c) peak d) wing
12. Sonar machines use sound in a .... way to dolphins.
    a) same b) some c) similar d) small
13. Velcro was .... by George de Mestral.
    a) done b) designed c) built d) solved

14. Engineers could find a .... to the problem of the bullet train loud noise.
   a) solution   b) solve   c) idea   d) question

15. Schools have rules to .... the students safe.
   a) kill   b) keep   c) has   d) get

16. I'm going to .... a presentation about smartphones.
   a) do   b) give   c) take   d) play

17. I thanked my dad .... helping me.
   a) in   b) on   c) for   d) to

18. The kingfisher goes into water to .... fish.
   a) have   b) catch   c) make   d) watch

19. The word "lastly" is the opposite of ....
   a) secondly   b) finally   c) firstly   d) quickly

20. We add the suffix " .... " to the word "noise" to get the adjective.
   a) -al   b) -y   c) -ing   d) -ed

Pronunciation

Strong and weak forms الصيغ القوية والضعيفة

When we speak, we put more stress on the most important words, such as objects, main verbs, and dates.

عندما نتكلم، نضع المزيد من التأكيد على أهم الكلمات، مثل: الأفعال الرئيسية، والتواريخ.

e.g. The telephone was invented in 1876.
The world wide web was invented in 1989.

Practice

Read the sentences and underline the stressed words.

a) People can use drones to deliver small parcels.

b) The bullet train travels very quickly.

c) The smartwatch was invented about 30 years ago.

Lesson (3)

Speaking Skills

Giving a presentation تقديم عرض

When you give a presentation about something, you can use some useful phrases. عندما تقدم عرضًا عن شيءٍ ما، يمكنك استخدام بعض العبارات المفيدة.

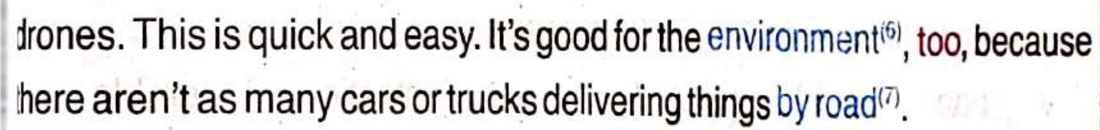
- I'm here today to talk about ... أنا هنا اليوم لأتحدث عن ...
- Firstly, I'd like to talk about .. أولاً، أود أن أكلم عن ...
- My first point is that ... النقطة الأولى هي ...
- My next point is that ... النقطة التالية هي ...
- Finally, I'd like to talk about ... أخيرًا، أود أن أكلم عن ...
- Thank you for listening. شكرًا لاستماعكم.
- Do you have any questions? هل لديكم أي أسئلة؟

Speaking Lesson 3 WB P. 80

Hello. I'm here today to talk about an invention which I think is great, although(1) lots of people disagree(2)! It's my drone.

My first point(3) is that drones are very useful. People can use them to study the land and learn about the history and the geography(4) of a place.

Also, lots of small parcels(5) are delivered by

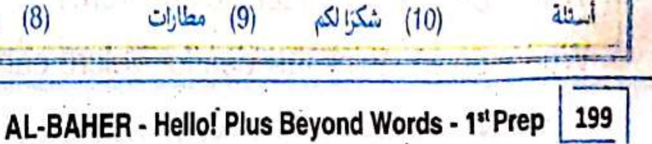


drones. This is quick and easy. It's good for the environment(6), too, because there aren't as many cars or trucks delivering things by road(7).

Finally, I'd like to talk about the bad things lots of people say that drones are dangerous. They can take photographs that people don't know about, and sometimes there are problems if they fly near airports(8).

Thank you(9) for listening. Do you have any questions(10)?

(1) بالرغم من (2) يختلف - يعارض (3) النقطة الأولى (4) الجغرافيا (5) طرود



(6) البيئة (7) برًا (8) مطارات (9) شكرًا لكم (10) أسئلة



General Exercises

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

caught - beak - bullet - catch - thin

The kingfisher is a bird that can fly very fast, but when it goes into water to 1) .... fish, the water doesn't move very much. The engineers thought this was because of the kingfisher's 2) .... It is very long and 3) ...., and it goes into the water first. The 4) .... train was designed to have a long, thin part at the front, like a kingfisher's beak. Now, it can travel very quickly, and it isn't noisy.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

You might think that inventors always work in laboratories; doing research and solving problems. In fact, a lot of their ideas come from nature. Animals and plants are <u>amazing</u>, and they can teach us how to make things that make our lives better.

One example is Velcro, a simple thing that you probably use every day to keep things together, and is often used on shoes. It was designed in 1948 by George de Mestral. He noticed how a plant used little "hooks" to stay on his clothes when he walked outside. He studied the plant and made Velcro to work in the same way.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "amazing" means ....
   a) bad   b) interested   c) fantastic   d) terrible
2. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) animals   b) nature inventions   c) problems   d) shoes

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do inventors often work? ....
4. What is Velcro used for? ....
5. Where do inventors' ideas come from? ....
6. Where do you think the idea for Velcro came from? ....

Lesson (3)

3 Complete the following dialog.

Hager and Huda are talking about the smartphone.

Hager: What do you think the most important invention is?
Huda : 1) ....
Hager: 2) .... ?
Huda : I play games on my smartphone.
Huda : I think people spend too much time on their smartphones.
Huda : 3) ....
Hager: Thank you for your time.
Huda : 4) ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We have our science lesson in the ....
   a) music room b) laboratory c) library d) mosque
2. Scientists got the idea for .... from ducks.
   a) Velcro b) flippers c) sonar d) train
3. The .... train is a special train in Japan.
   a) Metro b) Express c) bullet d) ball
4. The kingfisher has a long, thin ....
   a) beak b) leg c) wing d) peak
5. Thank you .... listening.
   a) to b) on c) for d) by
6. Dolphins find out where things are by making ....
   a) noises b) songs c) drops d) waves

5 Put the words in the correct order.

1. your - question - for - you - Thank - . ...
2. more - Can - details - us - give - you - ? ....
3. interesting - an - That's - question - . ...

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Smartphones (for or against)

Lessons (4 & 5)

- CLIL
- Culture
- Writing

Key vocabulary

history	التاريخ	global	عالمي
paper	ورق	temperature	درجة الحرارة
scroll	لفافة	windcatcher	ملقف الرياح
cloth	قماش	precious	نفيس / ثمين
rope	حبل	aqueduct	قناطر / قناة ماء
museum	متحف	culture	ثقافة
exhibition	معرض	national	قومي

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

papyrus	ورق البردي	holes	ثقوب
Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	bones	عظام
material	مادة	fantastic	رائع
Arabian Peninsula	شبه الجزيرة العربية	percentage	نسبة مئوية
seem (v)	يبدو	air conditioning	تكييف الهواء
type	نوع	unless	إلا إذا / إذا لم
mat	حصيرة / سجادة	courtyard	فناء ساحة
skin	جلد	escape(d)	يهرب
wood	خشب	create(d)	ينشئ
mix(ed)	يخلط	collect(ed)	يجمع
dry (y_ied)	يجفف / يجف	pots	أواني
eventually	أخيراً / في النهاية	weather	الطقس
interactive	تفاعلي	civilization	حضارة
season	موسم / فصل	store(d)	يخزن
The National Museum of Natural Sciences			المتحف القومي للعلوم الطبيعية

Definitions تعريفات

cloth	a material made from cotton or wool; we use it to make things like clothes	قماش
rope	a strong, long piece of string, which we use to carry or pull things	حبل
scroll	a long roll of paper	لفافة
telescope	It helps people study space.	تلسكوب
spacesuit	something people wear when they travel into space	بدلة الفضاء
skywells	small open courtyard within houses to keep houses cool and let warm air escape	آبار السماء
wind catcher	a small tower that catches cool air and pushes it down in the building beneath	ملقف الهواء
aqueduct	a bridge that helps water move from one place to another	قناة مائية / قناطر

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
leave	يترك	left	left
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
rise	يرتفع	rose	risen
hang	يعلق	hung	hung
hurt	يضر / يؤذى	hurt	hurt
cost	يكلف / يتكلف	cost	cost

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

make	paper	يصنع ورقا	**store**	water	يخزن الماء
visit	a museum	يزور متحفا	**go**	paper-free	يستغني عن الورق
dry	the reeds	يجفف البوص	**share**	ideas	يشارك الأفكار

Important Expressions تعبيرات هامة

change the way	يغير الطريقة	take part in	يشارك في
pieces of cloth	قطع من القماش	planet saving ways	طرق لإنقاذ الكوكب
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	keep cool	يحافظ على البرودة
space travel	السفر إلى الفضاء	As well as + v. ing	بالإضافة إلى

Important Prepositions حروف جر هامة

on animal skin	على جلد الحيوانات	find out about	يكتشف عن
mixed with	مخلوط بـ	in a clever way	بطريقة ذكية
(be) made into	يتحول إلى	curious about	فضولي بشأن
push down	يدفع لأسفل		

Synonyms & Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
thick	سميك	heavy/dense	thin	رفيع
ancient	قديم	very old	modern	حديث
type	نوع	kind / sort	______	
real	حقيقي	true	unreal / false	زائف
eventually	أخيرًا	finally	firstly	أولًا
beneath	أسفل	under	above	أعلى
wet	رطب	moist	dry	جاف
precious	نفيس	valuable	worthless	عديم القيمة

Prefixes المقاطع البادئة

-al	تكون الصفة من الاسم	globe	العالم	→ global	عالمي
		nation	شعب / أمة	→ national	قومي
		nature	طبيعة	→ natural	طبيعي
-ive	تكون الصفة من الفعل	interact	يتفاعل	→ interactive	تفاعلي



Reading Lesson 4 SB P. 122

The Invention of paper



Have you ever thought about how old paper is? It's something we probably[1] use every day, and it seems very simple to us now. But when it was invented, it changed[2] the way people communicated.

About 4,500 years ago, a thick water plant[3] called papyrus was used by Ancient Egyptians to make an early type[4] of paper. It was also used to make shoes, mats, and rope. In other places, people wrote on animal skins.

Real paper[5] as we know it today was invented in China, about 2,000 years ago. Wood from trees was mixed with pieces of cloth and water, then it was made into long scrolls of thin material and was left to dry in the sun.

From China, paper moved to[6] Japan and then the Arabian Peninsula. Eventually, it was used all over the world. As a cheap[7] and easy way to share ideas, paper was important for work and studying. Now, many people want to go paper-free because they want to save[8] trees, and you can read books online and write on a tablet instead[9].

(1) ربما	(2) غيرت	(3) نبات	(4) نوع	(5) الورق الحقيقي
(6) انتقل إلى	(7) رخيص	(8) ينقذ	(9) بدلًا من ذلك	



Reading Lesson 4 WB P. 81

The history of cameras

The camera was invented in 1839 by Louis Daguerre, in France. This was a very exciting invention, although[1] it was a lot slower[2] to take photographs than it is today. In 1888, George Eastman invented a smaller camera that used a special[3] paper to take photographs. These cameras were popular[4], and they became cheaper[5] to buy.

Most of the first photographs were black and white, but in the 1970s it got easier to take color photographs. In the 1980s, more people started to use digital[6] cameras. These use electronic[7] technology, not special paper, to take photographs.

(1) بالرغم من	(2) أبطأ	(3) خاص	(4) مشهورة
(5) أرخص	(6) رقمي	(7) إلكتروني	



Lesson 4 SB P. 123

The Science Museum

The Science Museum in London is a fantastic place to visit. You can see lots of exciting exhibitions[1] about the newest inventions. There is also information that helps you understand[2] more about nature. It's an exciting place to spend a day and to learn about[3] everything from gadgets[4] to space travel[5].

You can also take part in interactive[6] exhibitions, where you can touch and move different things to find out how things work.



The Science Museum



The Apollo 11 Command Module Columbia



An interactive exhibition



Where is it?

Exhibition Road, London

When is it open?

Open daily 10:00 a.m. – 6:00 p.m.

How much does it cost?

It's free!

(1)	معارض	(2)	يفهم	(3)	يتعلم عن
(4)	أدوات	(5)	السفر	(6)	تفاعلي



Reading Lesson 4 WB P. 81



The National Museum of Natural Sciences

The National[1] Museum of Natural Sciences[2] in Madrid, Spain. It was started in 1771 by King Cartos the third of Spain. It is one of the oldest science museums in Europe[3]. It was created[4] to tell people about the natural world in Spain and around the world.

Many natural things were collected[5] from Spain and other countries, and brought to the museum for people to see. When I visited it, I loved the dinosaur[6] exhibition best.

Now, the museum is much bigger than it was in 1771, and it has around eight million different things including animal bones, rocks, and plants. These things help scientists to understand how our world changes.

(1) قومي	(2) العلوم	(3) أوروبا
(4) أنشئ	(5) جمع	(6) ديناصور



Reading Lesson 5 WB P. 82

Saving precious water

As well as keeping cool, ancient civilizations[1] in hot countries had to find ways of saving[2] and using water in a clever[3] way. Without ways of storing[4] water, we might never have had vegetables! Can you imagine? Countries like Mexico had to find ways to give plants water through the dry season[5] when there was no rain. The Mayans used the whole city - their pyramids, squares[6], and aqueducts[7] (a bridge that helps water move from one place to another) to store rainwater in large containers[8] to use when there was no rain. Plants were also used to keep the water clean until it was needed. Today, scientists are looking again at what ancient people can teach us about storing rainwater[9] in places like India[10].

(1) حضارات	(2) توفير	(3) ذكية	(4) تخزين	(5) موسم الجفاف
(6) ميادين	(7) قناطر	(8) أوعية	(9) مياه الأمطار	(10) الهند

Reading Lesson 5 SB P. 124

Planet-saving ways of keeping cool!

Did you know that around 7% of global[1] electricity used today is for air conditioning? And as global temperatures[2] rise, that percentage is likely to increase unless we can find other ways to keep cool.

Many ancient cultures[3] can teach us a thing or two about keeping cool without electricity. The Ancient Egyptians, for example, hung[4] wet reeds[5] at windows. The wind dried the reeds, cooling the room. Houses also had thick walls to keep out the heat.





In China, people used "skywells" — small open courtyards[6] within houses, to keep houses cool and let warm air[7] escape. The Ancient Persians[8], meanwhile, used "wind catchers" — small towers that catch cool air and push it down into the buildings beneath[9].



In India, people used matka pots[10] to cool water during very hot weather[11]. These pots, which are made of terracotta (hard reddish-brown baked clay), have lots of little holes. When warm water is trapped[12] in the holes, it evaporates, helping to cool the rest of the water in the pot.

Today, people are using these ideas to develop[13] new ways of keeping cool, without hurting[14] the planet.

(1)	عالمي	(2)	درجات الحرارة	(3)	ثقافات
(4)	علّق	(5)	البوص	(6)	فناء
(7)	هواء دافئ	(8)	الفُرس	(9)	أسفل
(10)	أواني ماتكا	(11)	الطقس	(12)	يحبس
(13)	يطور	(14)	ضرر		

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The invention of paper changed the .... of people communicate.
   a) road b) way c) away d) face
2. .... is a thick water plant.
   a) Cloth b) Papyrus c) Cotton d) Linen
3. .... is a strong, long piece of string.
   a) Read b) Reed c) Rope d) Paper
4. .... is a long roll of paper.
   a) Cloth b) Scroll c) Book d) Wood
5. The real paper was .... in China.
   a) turned b) cooked c) invented d) discovered
6. They .... wood with pieces of cloth and water.
   a) mixed b) fixed c) burnt d) built
7. Most of the first photographs were ....
   a) colorful b) green c) black and white d) green
8. Some people want to go .... to save trees.
   a) paper-free b) cycling c) paper-busy d) swimming
9. You can see a lot of exciting .... in the Science Museum in London.
   a) animals b) exhibitions c) examinations d) people
10. The .... helps people to study space.
    a) plane b) camera c) telescope d) telephone
11. I'm .... about science and enjoy learning about new things.
    a) bored b) interested c) curious d) exciting
12. A / An .... is a small bridge that helps water move from one place to another.
    a) canal b) aqueduct c) river d) ferry
13. .... is a material made from cotton or wool; we use it to make things like clothes.
    a) Scroll b) Silk c) Cloth d) Plastic

14. Pots are made of ....

a) paper b) clay c) cotton d) sand

15. Digital cameras use .... technology to take photograph

a) electric b) critical c) electronic d) phonic

16. As well as .... to school, I went shoppin

a) go b) going c) to go d) went

17. It's important to find ways to .... water in a clever wa

a) store b) waste c) safe d) make

18. The word "thick" is the opposite of ....

a) fast b) fat c) thin d) soft

18. We must save our precious water. The word "precious" means ....

a) valuable b) cheap c) worthless d) rare

20. We add the suffix .... to get the adjective form "interact

a) -al b) -ed c) -ive d) -y

Speaking Skills

Talking about a visit to the science museum

التحدث عن زيارة إلى المتحف العلمي

Situation	Reply
Have you ever been to the science museum? هل زرت متحف العلوم من قبل؟	Yes, I went there last week. نعم، ذهبت إلى هناك الأسبوع الماضي.
What did you see there? ماذا رأيت هناك؟	I saw an exhibition about modern inventions. رأيت معرضًا عن الاختراعات الحديثة.
Can these museums help the scientists now? هل يمكن لهذه المتاحف أن تساعد العلماء الآن؟	Yes, they can find out how our world changes. نعم، يمكنهم معرفة كيف يتغير عالمنا.

Writing Skills

Writing an Article كتابة مقال

Features of a good article خصائص المقال الجيد

1. An interesting headline will grab the reader's attention.

عنوان مثير يجذب انتباه القارئ.

2. An unusual or interesting fact will keep your reader reading.

حقيقة غير معتادة أو مثيرة للاهتمام ستجعل القارئ يستمر في القراءة.

3. A question makes your reader feel you're talking directly to them.

السؤال يجعل القارئ يشعر بأن الكاتب يتحدث إليه مباشرة.

4. A smart introductory paragraph tells the reader what the report is about.

فقرة تمهيدية قصيرة تخبر القارئ عن ما يتناوله المقال.

Practice

1. Do some research about an invention. Write an article using the features of an article.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Science Museum is in ....
   a) Cairo b) London c) Paris d) Rome
2. The Science Museum is a .... place.
   a) exciting b) boring c) fine d) fantastic
3. We can see .... about the newest inventions.
   a) films b) movies c) exhibitions d) lessons
4. You can find .... to understand about nature.
   a) books b) information c) tour guides d) gadgets

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

invention - go - by - take - paper

The camera was invented in 1839 1).................... Louis Daguerre, in France. This was a very exciting 2)...................., although it was a lot slower to 3).................... photographs than it is today. In 1888, George Eastman invented a smaller camera that used a special 4).................... to take photographs. These cameras were very popular, and they became cheaper to buy. Most of the first photographs were black and white.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Digital cameras use .... technology to take photographs.
   a) electronic b) electric c) email d) old
2. .... are small towers that catch cool air and push it down into the buildings beneath.
   a) Aqueducts b) Pots c) Wind catchers d) Skywells
3. You can touch and move things in .... exhibitions.
   a) active b) action c) interactive d) online
4. Wood from trees .... with pieces of cloth and water.
   a) mix b) mixed c) was mixed d) are mixed

5. Water .... in a clever way.
   a) stored   b) was stored   c) is storing   d) store
6. These photographs .... with a digital camera.
   a) take   b) was taken   c) were taken   d) took

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The National Museum of Natural Sciences in Madrid, Spain. It was created in 1771 by King Cartos the third of Spain. It is one of the oldest science museums in Europe. It was created to tell people about the natural world in Spain and around the world. Many natural things were collected from Spain and other countries, and brought to the museum for people to see. Now, the museum is much bigger than it was in 1771, and it has around eight million different things including animal bones, rocks, and plants. These things help scientists to understand how our world changes.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Museum is in ....,Spain.
   a) Rome   b) Madrid   c) London   d) Paris
2. The underlined word "oldest" is the opposite of ....
   a) ancient   b) modern   c) big   d) historic

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the main idea of the text? ....
4. Why was the museum created? ....
5. How many items does the museum have now? ....
6. How do you think the things in the museum help the scientists? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order

1. invention - What - the - paper - of - did - change - ?

....

2. nature - can - about - in - You - museums - learn - .

....

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

The Science Museum

Writing Corner

Keep in in touch

How do you keep in touch with your friends and family? It's very easy now to send a message to your friends or make a video call. Many emails are sent every day. In the past, it was a lot more difficult. People used the mail to send letters. The mail was first invented in Persia (the country that is now called Iraq). Letters were carried by men on horses. They had to ride a long way across Persia to deliver the letters. Now, we use emails and messages to communicate. Modern technology has helped us keep in touch easily.

Nature's Inventions

In fact, a lot of inventors' ideas come from nature. Animals plants are amazing. They can teach us how to make things lives better. One example is sonar machines. They help us to find underwater and keep ships safe on long journeys. Sonar machines sound in a similar way to dolphins, by making noises and the sound that comes back. This tells them where to find things. example is flippers. They help us to swim faster and more easily. came from nature. Scientists studied animals, like ducks, whose them to move quickly in water.

The Science Museum in London

The Science Museum in London is a fantastic place to visit. You can see lots of exciting exhibitions about the newest inventions. There is also information that helps you understand more about nature. It's an exciting place to spend a day and to learn about everything from gadgets to space travel. You can also take part in interactive exhibitions, where you can touch and move different things to find out how things work.

Dictation on Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

المخترعات	....	حل	....
عجلة	....	يبقى على اتصال	....
طائرة بدون طيار	....	يشغل الموسيقى	....
ثلاجة	....	يوصل الطرود	....
التليغراف	....	يجرى مكالمة فيديو	....
بحث	....	يبحث عن معنى كلمة	....
الاتصال	....	يخترع	....
البريد	....	كاميرا رقمية	....
محرك	....	لاسلكى	....

Lesson (3)

يطور	....	يلاحظ	....
فكرة	....	زعانف (الغطس)	....
معمل	....	أقدام	....
يصمم	....	طائر الرفراف	....
الطبيعة	....	منقار	....
عرض	....	نفق	....
القطار السريع	....	تحت الماء	....

Lessons (4&5)

التاريخ	....	ورق البردى	....
ورق	....	جلد	....
لفافة	....	يخلط	....
قماش	....	يجفف	....
حبل	....	أخيرًا	....
معرض	....	يخزن الماء	....
عالمي	....	موسم الجفاف	....
نفيس	....	ملقف الرياح	....
قناطر	....	يصنع ورق	....
نوع	....	في كل أنحاء العالم	....

Review Based On Unit (11)

Vocabulary

inventions	اختراعات	sonar machine	جهاز السونار
drone	طائرة بدون طيار - مسيرة	inventor	مخترع
engine	محرك	sound	صوت
wheel	عجلة	bullet train	قطار الرصاصة - السريع
solution	حل	tunnel	نفق
research	بحث	beak	منقار
gadget	أداة	design	تصميم
smartwatch	ساعة ذكية	Velcro	فيلكرو
telegraph	التلغراف	hooks	خطاف
deliver	يوصل	scroll	لفافة
post-mail	بريد	cloth	قماش
communication	اتصال	paper	ورق
develop	يطور	wireless	لاسلكي
laboratory	مختبر - معمل	rope	حبل
flippers	زعانف	museum	متحف
national	قومي	exhibition	معرض
stored	مخزن	papyrus	ورق البردي

Grammar

The Passive

Object + (am / is / are) مضارع / (was / were) ماضي + P.P + (by + subject)

- Smartphones are used to send messages.
- The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.
- Is music taught at your school?
- German isn't spoken in many countries.

Speaking

I'm here today to talk about	Firstly, I'd like to talk about ....
My next point is that	Finally, ...
Thank you for listening.	Do you have any questions?

Test Based On Unit (11)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When was the telegraph invented? ....
   a) 1820s b) 1830s c) 1850s d) 1930s
2. It was a .... to the problem of how long letters took to arrive.
   a) question b) answer c) solution d) invention
3. Graham Bell invented the ....
   a) telephone b) TV c) telegraph d) email
4. The telegraph was used to send .... quickly.
   a) email b) letters c) messages d) photos

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use the .... in the kitchen to keep food cold.
   a) cooker b) fridge c) drone d) microwave
2. Scientists often work in a ....
   a) bank b) laboratory c) school d) station
3. Inventors try hard to find a .... to problems.
   a) solution b) situation c) pollution d) key

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

engineers - doctors - Japan - solution - noise

The bullet train is a special train in 1)............ that can travel up to 200 miles per hour. It is a very fast way to travel! But the 2)......... who developed it found that it made a loud 3)...................... when it came out of a tunnel. This was a problem, and the engineers found a 4)............. in nature.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

About 4,500 years ago, a thick water plant called papyrus was used by Ancient Egyptians to make an early type of paper. It was also used to make sails, ropes, mats, and rope in other places. Some people wrote on animal skins. Real paper, as we know it today, was invented in China about 2,000 years ago.

Wood from trees was mixed with pieces of cloth and water, then it was made into long scrolls of thin material and was left to dry in the sun.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "type" is the synonym of ....
   a) kind   b) nice   c) book   d) example
2. Some people used animal .... to write on.
   a) legs   b) hair   c) skin   d) leather

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the text about?

....

4. What's papyrus?

....

5. What did the Ancient Egyptians use papyrus for?

....

6. Who do you think made the paper?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The best cars .... in Japan.
   a) make   b) made   c) are made   d) was made
2. This story .... two years ago.
   a) wrote   b) is written   c) was written   d) is writing
3. Our homework was marked .... our teacher.
   a) with   b) by   c) to   d) at

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Only a few letters .... (deliver) these days.
2. Engines .... (invent) so that cars could move.
3. .... that house .... (build) in the 1990s?
4. English is spoken .... (with) people all over the world.

Test Based On Unit (11)

7 Complete the following dialog.

Huda is talking to Mona about the computer.

Huda : Hi, Mona. What's the most important invention?
Mona : 1) ....
Huda : 2) ....?
Mona : It was invented in 1822.
Huda : Do you use the computer at school?
Mona : 3) ....
Huda : 4) ....?
Mona : Of course, I can help you to use it.
Huda : Thank you very much.
Mona : You're welcome.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Inventions of communication

....

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "It's behind the mirror in my bedroom." a- Tom
2. "I'm so pleased to see you." b- Edward
3. "I'll punish you both." c. The Judge

B Answer the following questions:

1. Where was Tom getting ready to be king?

....

2. What did Lord Hertford say about Miles?

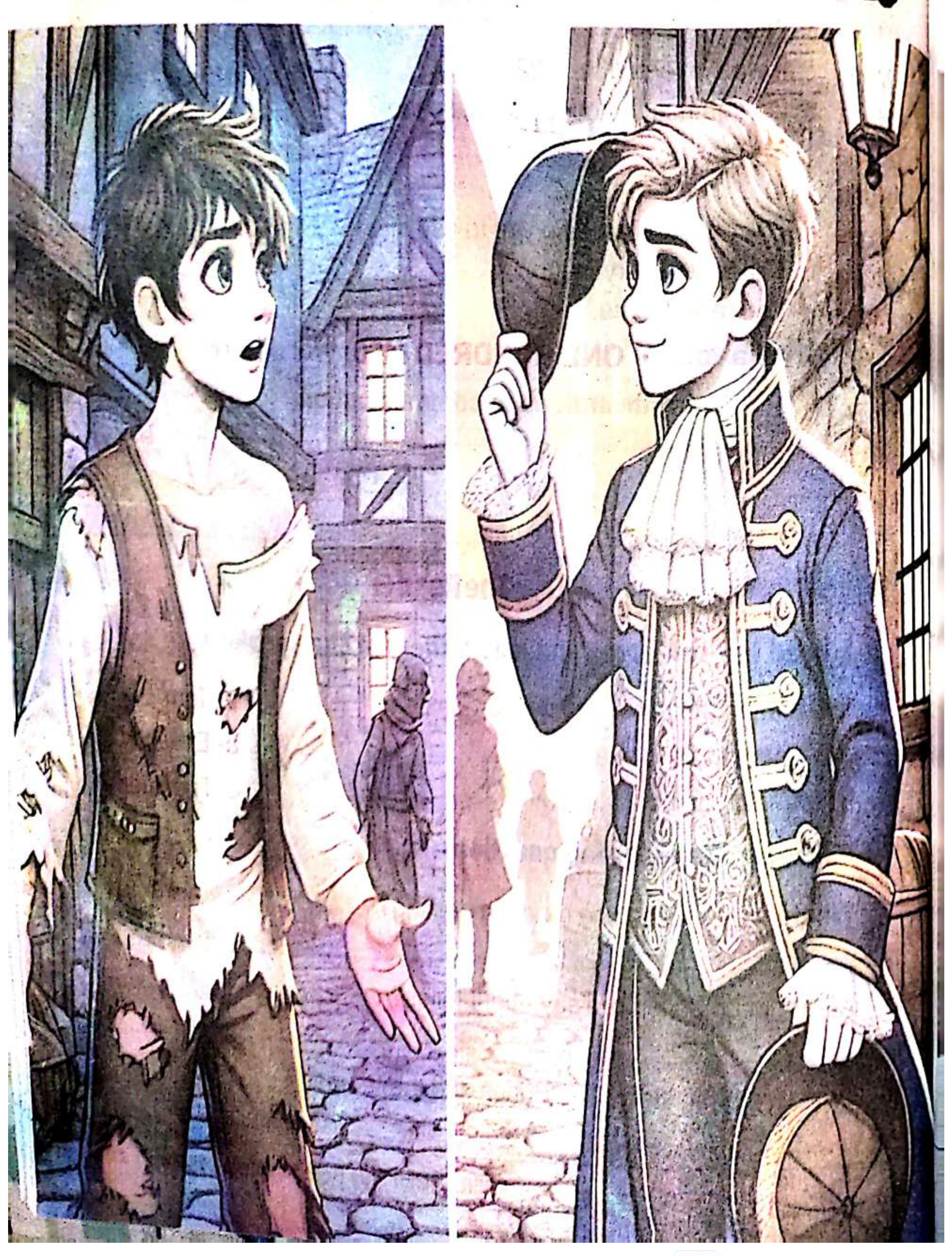
....

3. Who wrote the story "The Prince and the Pauper"?

....

LITERATURE

THE PRINCE AND THE PAUPER



Chapter (4)

Vocabulary

inn	فندق صغير - نُزُل	meal	وجبة - طعام
lay down	استلقى	stare at	يحملق في
give back	يعيد	kneel down	يركع
dress	يُلبِس	plenty of	كثير من
rest	يستريح	fight	قتال - مشاجرة
soldier	جندي	sword	سيف
Sir	سيد "لقب إنجليزي"	fell asleep	نام
servant	خادم	sign	يوقع
full	شبعان		

Definitions تعريفات

inn	a place where you can stay and eat meals	فندق صغير - نُزُل
stare	to look at for a long time without moving your eyes	يحملق
sword	weapon with a long-pointed blade and handle	سيف
enormous	very big in size or amount	ضخم - هائل
plenty	a large quantity that is enough or more than enough	كثير من
servant	a person who helps to look after a big house and the people who live in it	خادم

Main points

- Miles and Edward went to an inn. Edward was very tired and lay down on the bed. ذهب مايلز وإدوارد إلى الفندق، كان إدوارد متعب جدًا واستلقى على السرير.
- Miles got a meal to Edward as he was hungry.
  أحضر مايلز طعامًا لإدوارد، لأنه كان جائعًا.
- Miles was the eldest son of a rich family, but he had a fight with his younger brother, Arthur. كان مايلز الابن الأكبر لعائلة غنية، لكنه تشاجر مع أخيه الأصغر آرثر.
- Miles went to France as a soldier. His brother took his home, Hendon Hall. ذهب مايلز إلى فرنسا كجندي، أخذ أخوه منزله "Hendon Hall".
- Edward made Miles Sir Miles Hendon and became one of the king's men. منح إدوار مايلز لقب Sir واصبح واحدًا من رجال الملك.
- The next morning, Miles went to buy Edward some new clothes.
  في صباح اليوم التالي، ذهب مايلز ليشتري لإدوارد بعض الملابس الجديدة.
- Hugo came and told Edward to go to Southwark Bridge, as Miles Hendon was waiting there for him.
  جاء Hugo وأخبر إدوارد أن يذهب إلى جسر Southwark لأن مايلز ينتظره هناك.
- Tom was in Westminster Palace. He missed his sisters Bet and Nan, and his mother. كان توم في قصر Westminster. إنه يفتقد شقيقتيه Bet و Nan، وأمه.
- Now he was the king of England. Servants got him his clothes and breakfast. الآن أصبح ملك إنجلترا. أحضر له الخدم الملابس والإفطار.
- The palace was beautiful, but Tom wanted to go home and play with his friends. كان القصر جميلًا، ولكن توم كان يريد أن يعود للبيت ويلعب مع أصدقائه.

Chapter 4

Miles and Edward went to an inn where Miles had a room. Edward, who was very tired, lay down on the bed. It was not his, of course, but he was the king!

ذهب مايلز وإدوارد إلى نزل حيث كان لمايلز غرفة. تمدد إدوارد، الذي كان متعبًا جدًا، على السرير. لم يكن السرير له بالطبع، لكنه كان الملك!

"Bring me my meal," he told Miles.
Miles laughed. "Yes, sir. Rest here and I will go down to the kitchen."
A short time later, Miles returned with some food.
"Your meal is ready, sir," he said to Edward, sitting down at the table.
"Wait," said Edward. "I must sit down first. You can sit down when I tell you."
Miles **stared** at Edward in surprise.
"All right," Edward said a few moments later. "You may sit."
During the meal, Miles told Edward about his life. He was the eldest son of a rich family, but he had a fight with his younger brother, Arthur. Miles left the country and went to France as a soldier.
"After I left, my brother took my home, Hendon Hall," he explained. "It will be difficult to get it back."
"I am the king," Edward told him. "I will speak to your brother and make him give you back your home. And I will give you more land because you have helped me."
Miles thanked the boy, but Edward was not finished.

قال لمايلز: "أحضر لي وجبتي."
ضحك مايلز وقال: "حاضر يا سيدي. استرح هنا وسأنزل إلى المطبخ."
بعد وقت قصير، عاد مايلز ومعه بعض الطعام.
قال مايلز لإدوارد وهو يجلس إلى الطاولة: "وجبتك جاهزة يا سيدي."
قال إدوارد: "انتظر، يجب أن أجلس أولاً. يمكنك الجلوس عندما آذن لك."
حدّق مايلز في إدوارد بدهشة.
قال إدوارد بعد لحظات: "حسنًا، يمكنك الجلوس."
أثناء تناول الطعام، أخبر مايلز إدوارد عن حياته. كان الابن الأكبر لعائلة غنية، لكنه تشاجر مع شقيقه الأصغر، آرثر. غادر مايلز البلاد وذهب إلى فرنسا كجندي.
قال مايلز موضحًا: "بعد رحيلي، استولى أخي على منزلي، "Hendon Hall". سيكون من الصعب استعادته."
قال إدوارد له: "أنا الملك. سأتحدث إلى أخيك وأجعله يعيد لك منزلك، وسأمنحك مزيدًا من الأراضي لأنك ساعدتني."
شكر مايلز الفتى، لكن إدوارد لم ينته بعد.

"Give me your **sword**," he said, "and I will make you Sir Miles Hendon."
Edward took the **sword** and Miles kneeled down before him.
"You are now one of the king's men," Edward told him.
Edward was so tired that he soon fell asleep. The next morning, Miles went to buy him some new clothes. But when he returned, Edward was gone.
"Where's the boy?" Miles asked a **servant** who worked at the inn.
"Another boy came here," the servant told him. "His name was Hugo. He told the boy to go to Southwark Bridge," he said, "and called Miles Hendon is waiting there for him."
"But I am Miles Hendon!" he cried. "I must hurry!"

That same morning, Tom woke up in Westminster Palace. He was alone in an **enormous** bed in an enormous room! He missed his sisters and his mother. And he was the king of England!
A servant came into the room.
"Would you like to rise, Your Majesty?" Tom stared at the servant. "What do you mean? Do I want to get up?"

قال إدوارد: "أعطني سيفك، وسأجعلك السير مايلز هندون."

أخذ إدوارد السيف، وجثا مايلز على ركبتيه أمامه.

قال له إدوارد: "أنت الآن أحد رجال الملك."

كان إدوارد متعبًا جدًا لدرجة أنه سرعان ما غلبه النعاس ونام. في صباح اليوم التالي، ذهب مايلز ليشتري له بعض الملابس الجديدة، ولكن عندما عاد، كان إدوارد قد اختفى.

سأل مايلز خادمًا يعمل في النزل: "أين الفتى؟"

قال له الخادم: "جاء فتى آخر إلى هنا، اسمه "Hugo". أخبر الفتى أن يذهب إلى جسر "Southwark"، وقال له إن مايلز هندون ينتظره هناك."

صاح مايلز: "لكنني أنا مايلز هندون! يجب أن أسرع!"

في ذلك الصباح نفسه، استيقظ توم في قصر "Westminister". كان وحده في سرير ضخم داخل غرفة هائلة الحجم! كان يفتقد شقيقاته ووالدته. ومع ذلك، كان هو ملك إنجلترا!

دخل الخادم إلى الغرفة.

قال الخادم: "هل ترغب في النهوض، يا جلالة الملك؟" حدق توم في الخادم وقال: "ماذا تعني؟ هل أرغب في النهوض؟"



The words used in the palace were new to Tom.
"Um, yes," he replied. "Yes, I do."
"Very good, Your Majesty," said the servant. "I will bring your clothes."
When the servant returned, two more servants were with him. Tom did not understand why there were three servants to dress a king!

At breakfast, one servant carried the food and then gave it to another servant, who gave it to a third servant to put on the table. There were two more servants who did nothing except stand behind Tom's chair.
After breakfast, Tom had to listen to Lord Hertford and some important a gentlemen talking about things he didn't understand. He also had to sign a lot of papers, writing Edward instead of Tom.
That evening, there was another big meal at the palace, but Tom could not eat very much. He was still full!
When he finally went to bed, he felt sad. "The palace is beautiful and so are my clothes, and there is **plenty** of food to eat. But I want to see my sisters and play with my friends. I want to go home."
Where was Edward, the real king?

كانت الكلمات المستخدمة في القصر جديدة على توم.

أجاب توم مترددًا: "أم، نعم. نعم، أرغب في ذلك."

قال الخادم: "حسنٌ جدًا، جلالتك. سأحضر ملابسك."

عندما عاد الخادم، كان معه خادمان آخران. لم يفهم توم لماذا هناك ثلاثة خدم لتلبيس الملك!

أثناء الإفطار، حمل خادمٌ الطعام ثم أعطاه لخادم آخر، والذي بدوره ناوله لخادم ثالث ليضعه على الطاولة. وكان هناك خادمان آخران لم يفعلا شيئًا سوى الوقوف خلف كرسي توم.

بعد الإفطار، كان على توم أن يستمع للورد هيرتفورد وبعض السادة المهمين وهم يتحدثون عن أمور لم يفهمها. وكان عليه أيضًا أن يوقع الكثير من الأوراق، كاتبًا "إدوارد" بدلًا من "توم".

في ذلك المساء، كان هناك عشاء كبير آخر في القصر، لكن توم لم يستطع أن يأكل كثيرًا، فقد كان لا يزال شبعانًا!

عندما ذهب أخيرًا إلى الفراش، شعر بالحزن. قال لنفسه: "القصر جميل وملابسي جميلة، وهناك الكثير من الطعام لأكله. لكنني أريد أن أرى شقيقتي والعب مع أصدقائي. أريد أن أعود إلى المنزل."

أين كان إدوارد، الملك الحقيقي؟



1 Answer the following questions.

1. **Where did Miles and Edward go?** أين ذهب مايلز وإدوارد؟

They went to an inn. ذهبا إلى الفندق.

2. **How did Edward feel?** كيف كان حال إدوارد؟

He was very tired and lay down on the bed. كان متعبًا جدًا واستلقى على السرير.

3. **What did Miles tell Edward during the meal?** ماذا أخبر مايلز إدوارد أثناء الطعام؟

He told him that he was the eldest son of a rich family.

أخبره أنه الابن الأكبر لعائلة غنية.

4. **When did Miles leave the country?** متى غادر مايلز البلاد؟

After he had a fight with his younger brother, Arthur.

بعد أن تشاجر مع أخيه الأصغر آرثر.

5. **What did Arthur do?** ماذا فعل آرثر؟

He took his home, Hendon Hall. أخذ بيته، قاعة هندون "Hendon Hall".

6. **What did Edward promise to do to Miles?** ماذا وعد إدوارد بأن يفعل لمايلز؟

He promised to speak to Arthur and make him give Miles back his home. وعده أن يتحدث إلى آرثر ويجعله يعيد له المنزل.

7. **What did Edward make with the sword?** ماذا فعل إدوارد بالسيف؟

He made Miles Sir Miles Hendon. He became one of the king's men.

جعل مايلز "Sir" وأصبح أحد رجال الملك.

8. **Where did Miles go?** أين ذهب مايلز؟

He went to buy some new clothes for Edward.

ذهب ليشتري بعض الملابس لإدوارد.

9. **Where did Edward go?** أين ذهب إدوارد؟

Another boy, called Hugo, came and told him to go to Southwark Bridge. جاء ولد آخر يدعى هوجو "Hugo" وقال له أن يذهب إلى جسر Southwark.

10. Where was Tom when he woke up? أين كان توم عندما استيقظ؟

He was in Westminster Palace, in an enormous bed, in an enormous room. كان في قصر Westminster في سرير ضخم في غرفة ضخمة.

11. How many servants were there to dress the king?

كم كان عدد الخدم لتلبيس الملك؟

There were three servants. كان هناك ثلاثة خدم.

12. What did Tom have to sign? ماذا كان يجب على Tom أن يوقع؟

He had to sign a lot of papers, writing Edward instead of Tom.

كان عليه أن يوقع الكثير من الأوراق ويكتب اسم إدوارد بدلًا من توم.

13. Why wasn't Tom happy in the palace? لماذا لم يكن توم سعيدًا في القصر؟

Because he wanted to see his sisters and play with his friends.

لأنه أراد رؤية شقيقتيه واللعب مع أصدقائه.

2 Critical Thinking Questions.

1. Why do you think Edward told Miles not to sit down till he told him? في رأيك لماذا أخبر أدوارد مايلز ألا يجلس حتى يأذن له؟

Because he was the king and it was the customs.

لأنه كان الملك وهذه هي العادات.

2. If you were Tom, would you be happy in the palace?

لو كنت مكان توم، هل ستكون سعيدًا في القصر؟

No, because I would like to play with my friends.

لا، لأنني كنت سأرغب باللعب مع أصدقائي.

Or Yes, because it was beautiful and there were a lot of things.

أو نعم، لأن القصر جميل وهناك الكثير من الأشياء.

3 Quotations.

Quotation	Speaker
"Bring me my meal."	Edward
"After I left, my brother took my home, Hendon Hall."	Miles
"Give me your sword."	Edward
"I'm the king. I'll speak to your brother."	Edward
"You're now one of the king's men."	Edward
"Where's the boy?"	Miles
"Another boy came here. His name was Hugo."	A servant
"Would you like to rise, Your Majesty?"	A servant
"What do you mean? Do I want to get up?"	Tom
"The palace is beautiful, and so are my clothes."	Tom

4 Read the sentences and circle (T) True or (F) False and correct the false ones.

1. Miles stared at Edward in surprise. (T)
2. Edward took the knife and Miles kneeled down before him. (F)

   Correction: sword
3. Tom had to sign a lot of paper. (T)
4. "There were two servants to dress the king. (F)

   Correction: three

Activities On Chapter (4)

1 **Read the sentences and circle (T) True or (F) False and correct the false ones.**

1. In the palace, Edward was very tired and fell asleep. (T / F)

....

2. Miles was the eldest son of a rich family. (T / F)

....

3. Miles's sister took his home, Hendon Hall. (T / F)

....

4. Miles felt it would be easy to get his home back. (T / F)

....

5. During the meal, Miles told Edward about his hobbies. (T / F)

....

6. Edward made Miles Sir Miles Hendon. (T / F)

....

7. Tom wanted to see his sisters and play with his friends. (T / F)

....

8. Edward promised to speak to Arthur and persuade him to give the home back to Miles. (T / F)

....

9. Miles left the country and went to England as a soldier. (T / F)

....

10. Tom couldn't eat very much because he was still full. (T / F)

....

2 Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "Bring my meal." a- Tom
2. "Where's the boy?" b- Miles
3. "The palace is beautiful." c- Edward

---

1. "I want to see my sisters and play with my friends." a- Miles
2. "Would you like to rise, your Majesty?" b- Tom
3. "After I left, my brother took my home." c- A servant

---

1. "I must sit down first." a- Tom
2. "I want to go home." b- Miles
3. "It will be difficult to get it back." c- Edward

3 Answer the following questions.

1. How did Edward feel when they went to the inn?

....

2. What did Miles tell Edward during the meal?

....

3. Who took Miles's home?

....

4. How many servants were there when Tom had breakfast?

....

5. What did Edward promise to do to Miles?

....

6. How did Tom feel when he went to bed?

....

Chapter (4)

7. Where did Hugo tell Edward to go to?

....

8. What did Tom have to do instead of Edward?

....

9. Why wasn't Tom happy at the palace?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Where did Miles and Edward go to rest for the night? ....

   a) Pudding   b) Westminster   c) An inn   d) The palace

2. Miles left to the country and went to ....

   a) Egypt   b) London   c) Japan   d) France

3. Miles thought it would be .... to get his home back.

   a) difficult   b) easy   c) simple   d) long

4. Who did Miles have a fight with in the past? ....

   a) Tom   b) His father   c) His brother   d) Edward

5. Edward took the .... and Miles kneeled down before him.

   a) knife   b) gun   c) sword   d) stick

6. Edward went to Southwark ....

   a) Palace   b) Bridge   c) House   d) Hall

7. Tom was alone in an .... bed.

   a) small   b) large   c) enormous   d) circle

8. Tom missed his ....

   a) father   b) sisters and mother   c) uncle   d) brother

Chapter (5)

Vocabulary

beg	يتسول	ride	يركب
pretend	يتظاهر	recognize	يتعرف على
lying on the ground	يستلقي على الأرض	had a fight	تشاجَرَ
pain	ألم	prison	سجن
thief	لص	judge	قاضي
run off	يهرب	steal	يسرق
reappeared	يظهر ثانية	punish	يعاقب
hen	دجاجة	stocks	القضبان
horrible	فظيع - سيء جدًا	release	يطلق سراح
realize	يدرك	rotten eggs	بيض عفن

Definitions تعريفات

grab	to take hold of someone or something suddenly	ينتزع
horrible	very bad or unpleasant	فظيع - سيء جدًا
judge	a person who has the power to decide things in court	قاضي
stocks	a wooden frame with holes in it for someone's hands and feet	قضبان "عمود التشهير"
release	to let the prisoner go	يطلق سراح
rotten	not fresh, old and bad	عفِن

Chapter (5)

Main points

- At Southwark Bridge John Canty told Edward he had to go with Hugo to beg for money.

عند جسر Southwark اخبر جون كانتي إدوارد انه عليه الذهاب مع هوجو للتسول من أجل المال.

- Edward would stop people and tell them that Hugo wasn't very well and they had no food.

إدوارد سوف يوقف الناس ويخبرهم بأن هوجو مريض جدًا وأنهم ليس لديهم أي طعام.

- A gentleman came along the road and looked at Hugo on the ground. Hugo pretended to be very ill and in great pain.

مر رجل على الطريق ونظر إلى هوجو على الأرض. تظاهر هوجو بأنه مريض جدًا ويعاني من ألم شديد.

- Edward said Hugo wasn't his brother. He was a thief.

قال إدوارد أن هوجو ليس أخاه. وأنه لص.

- It was a market day in the town. A woman had a hen in a basket. She wanted to sell it.

كان يوم السوق في المدينة. وكانت امرأة معها دجاجة في السلة. تريد أن تبيعها.

- Hugo took the hen and put it into Edward's hands and shouted "Thief!"

اخذ هوجو الدجاجة ووضعها في يد إدوارد وصرخ قائلاً "لص!"

- Miles found Edward and gave the woman some money for the hen.

وجد مايلز إدوارد وأعطى المرأة بعض المال مقابل الدجاجة.

- They went to Hendon Hall. Miles had a fight with his brother. Miles and Edward were taken to prison.

ذهبوا إلى بيت Hendon Hall. تشاجر مايلز مع أخيه وأخذوا مايلز وإدوارد إلى السجن.

- The judge put Miles in the stocks but he decided not to punish Edward as he did nothing wrong.

وضع القاضي مايلز في القضبان (عمود التشهير)، لكنه قرر عدم معاقبة إدوارد لأنه لم يفعل شيئاً خاطئاً.

- When Miles was released from the stocks, they went to London. Edward wrote a letter to Lord Hertford.

عندما أطلق سراح مايلز من القضبان (عمود التشهير)، ذهبوا إلى لندن. كتب إدوارد رسالة إلى اللورد هيرتفورد.



Chapter 5

At Southwark Bridge, John Canty told Edward he had to go with Hugo to beg for money.

"Pretend I'm your brother," Hugo told him. "When people come along the road, stop them and tell them that I'm not very well. Tell them that we have no food, then they will give us some money."

When a gentleman came along the road, he looked at Hugo lying on the ground. Hugo pretended to be very ill and in great pain, but Edward did and said nothing.

"We must find your brother a doctor," said the gentleman.

"He's not my brother!" said Edward. "He's a thief and I am the king!"

When the gentleman reached out to help Hugo, Hugo ran off. The gentleman left as well, and Edward continued along the road alone. As he reached a nearby town, however, Hugo reappeared.

It was market day in the town. Hugo saw a woman with a basket in her arms. In the basket was a big, brown hen. The woman wanted to sell the hen at the market. But Hugo took the hen, put it into Edward's arms, and then ran off again, shouting, "Thief! Thief!"

عند جسر " Southwark"، أمر جون كانتي إدوارد بالذهاب مع هوجو للتسوّل من أجل المال.

قال له هوجو: "تظاهر بأني أخوك. عندما يمر الناس على الطريق، أوقفهم وقل لهم إنني لست بخير، وإننا بلا طعام حينها سيعطوننا بعض المال."

عندما مرّ رجل نبيل على الطريق، نظر إلى هوجو الممدد على الأرض. فتظاهر هوجو بأنه مريض للغاية ويعاني من ألم شديد، بينما لم يفعل إدوارد شيئاً ولم يقل شيئاً.

قال الرجل النبيل: "علينا أن نجد طبيباً لأخيك."

قال إدوارد: "إنه ليس أخي! إنه لص، وأنا الملك!"

عندما مدّ الرجل النبيل يده لمساعدة هوجو، هرب هوجو بعيداً. غادر الرجل النبيل أيضاً، وأكمل إدوارد طريقه وحده. لكن عندما وصل إلى بلدة قريبة، ظهر هوجو مجدداً.

كان اليوم يوم السوق في البلدة. رأى هوجو امرأة تحمل سلة بين ذراعيها، وفي السلة دجاجة كبيرة بنية اللون. كانت المرأة تريد بيع الدجاجة في السوق. لكن هوجو أخذ الدجاجة ووضعها بين يدي إدوارد، ثم هرب مجدداً وهو يصيح "لص!

Chapter (5)

The people at the market were angry. They did not like thieves.

"Thief!" the woman shouted at Edward, trying to grab her hen.

"What's going on?" said a voice that Edward knew.

"Miles!" he cried in relief.

Miles looked at the hen in Edward's arms. "You chose a nice, fat hen," he said, and cleverly put some money into the woman's basket. When the woman found it, she realized Edward was not a thief after all.

"How did you find me?" Edward asked Miles as they rode out of town on Miles's horse.

"A man on the road told me he saw two boys. One of the boys said he was the king, so I knew it was you."

They rode all the way to Hendon Hall. Miles's brother was there, but he didn't recognize Miles.

"My brother died in the war in France," he said.

"No, he didn't. I am your brother!" Miles was angry. "And this is my home!"

كان الناس في السوق غاضبين؛ فلم يكونوا يحبون اللصوص.

صاحت المرأة في إدوارد: "لص!" محاولةً أن تستعيد دجاجتها.

قال صوت يعرفه إدوارد: "ما الذي يجري؟"

صاح بارتياح: "مايلز!"

نظر مايلز إلى الدجاجة بين ذراعي إدوارد وقال: "لقد اخترت دجاجة سمينة وجميلة"، ووضع بذكاء بعض المال في سلة المرأة. وعندما وجدته المرأة، أدركت أن إدوارد لم يكن لصاً.

سأل إدوارد مايلز وهوما يغادران البلدة على حصان مايلز: "كيف وجدتني؟"

أجاب مايلز: "أخبرني رجل على الطريق أنه رأى صبيين، وقال أحدهما إنه الملك، فعرفت أنه أنت."

ركبا طوال الطريق إلى " Hendon Hall. كان شقيق مايلز هناك، لكنه لم يتعرف على مايلز.

قال: "أخي مات في الحرب في فرنسا."

قال مايلز بغضب: "كلا، لم يمت. أنا أخوك وهذا منزلي!"



Miles and his brother began to fight. Servants ran into the room to help his brother, and Miles and Edward were taken away to prison.

Prison was a **horrible** place. Edward felt worse than ever.

"How will we get out of here?" he asked Miles.

"Give me time," said Miles. "I will think of a plan."

The next day, Miles and Edward had to go before a **judge**. The judge did not believe Miles's story about his brother stealing his home.

"I will punish you both," the judge said.

"But the boy is young," argued Miles. "He did nothing wrong. Do not hurt him."

The judge listened to Miles and decided not to punish Edward, but he put Miles in the **stocks**. People threw rotten eggs and fruit at him.

"Stop!" Edward shouted, standing in front of the stocks. "He is a good man!"

Finally, when Miles was **released** from the stocks, they went to London. There, Edward wrote a letter to Lord Hertford.

بدأ مايلز وأخوه في الشجار. فركض الخدم إلى الغرفة لمساعدة أخيه، وتم اقتياد مايلز وإدوارد إلى السجن.

كان السجن مكاناً مروعاً، وشعر إدوارد بسوءٍ لم يشعر به من قبل.

سأل إدوارد مايلز: "كيف سنخرج من هنا؟"

قال مايلز: "أعطني بعض الوقت. سأفكر في خطة."

في اليوم التالي، اضطر مايلز وإدوارد للمثول أمام القاضي. لم يصدق القاضي قصة مايلز عن أن شقيقه سرق منزله.

قال القاضي: "سأعاقبكما أنتما الاثنان."

جادل مايلز قائلاً: "لكن الصبي صغير، ولم يرتكب أي خطأ. لا تؤذيه."

استمع القاضي إلى مايلز وقرر عدم معاقبة إدوارد، لكنه وضع مايلز في القضبان (عمود التشهير). وبدأ الناس برميه بالبيض الفاسد والفواكه المتعفنة.

صاح إدوارد وهو يقف أمام القضبان (عمود التشهير): "توقفوا! إنه رجل صالح!"

وأخيراً، عندما أُطلق سراح مايلز من القضبان (عمود التشهير)، توجها إلى لندن. وهناك كتب إدوارد رسالة إلى اللورد هيرتفورد.



Chapter (5)

1 Answer the following questions.

1. **What did John Canty tell Edward to do?** ماذا أمر جون كانتي إدوارد أن يفعل؟

He told him that he had to go with Hugo to beg for money.

أخبره أنه يجب أن يذهب مع هوجو ليتسول من أجل المال.

2. **What did Hugo do to get money from the gentleman?**

ماذا فعل هوجو ليحصل على المال من الرجل؟

He pretended to be very ill and in great pain.

تظاهر بأنه مريض جدًا ويعاني من ألم شديد.

3. **What did Edward say to the gentleman?** ماذا قال إدوارد للرجل؟

He told him that Hugo wasn't his brother and he was a thief.

أخبره أن هوجو ليس أخاه وأنه لص.

4. **What did the woman in the market have?** ماذا كان لدى المرأة في السوق؟

She had a basket with a big brown hen in it.

كانت معها سلة كبيرة تحتوي على دجاجة بنية كبيرة.

5. **What did Hugo do with the hen?** ماذا فعل هوجو بالدجاجة؟

He put the hen into Edward's hands, then ran off shouting, "Thief!"

وضع الدجاجة في يد إدوارد ثم هرب صارخًا، "لص"!

6. **What was Edward accused of?** بماذا اتهم إدوارد؟

He was accused of stealing the hen. اتهم بسرقة الدجاجة.

7. **How did Miles save Edward?** كيف أنقذ مايلز إدوارد؟

He cleverly put some money in the woman's basket. The woman realized that Edward wasn't a thief after all.

وضع بذكاء بعض المال في سلة المرأة. أدركت المرأة أن إدوارد لم يكن لصًا.

8. **Who was there at Hendon Hall?** من كان هناك في "Hendon Hall"؟

Miles's brother was there, but he didn't recognize Miles.

كان أخو مايلز هناك، لكنه لم يتعرف على مايلز.

9. **Why were Miles and Edward taken away to prison?**

لماذا أخذ مايلز وإدوارد إلى السجن؟

Because Miles had a fight with his brother. لأن مايلز تشاجر مع أخيه.

10. **What did the judge decide to do to Edward and Miles at first?**

ماذا قرر القاضي أن يفعل بإدوارد ومايلز في البداية؟

He decided to punish them both. قرر أن يعاقبهما هما الاثنان.

11. **What did the judge decide to do to Edward after listening to Miles?** ماذا قرر القاضي أن يفعل بإدوارد بعد الاستماع لمايلز؟

He decided not to punish Edward, but he put Miles in the stocks.

قرر ألا يعاقب إدوارد، لكنه وضع مايلز في القضبان (عمود التشهير).

12. **Where did they go after Miles was released?**

إلى أين ذهبوا بعد أن أطلق سراح مايلز؟

They went to London. ذهبوا إلى لندن.

13. **What did Edward write to Lord Hertford?** ماذا كتب إدوارد إلى لورد هيرتفورد؟

He wrote a letter. كتب رسالة.

2 Critical Thinking Questions.

1. **Why do you think Arthur said that his brother died in the war in France?** في رأيك لماذا قال آرثر إن أخاه مات في الحرب في فرنسا؟

In order not to give him back his home.

لكي لا يعيد له منزله.

2. **Do you think Miles deserves to be punished? Why / Why not?**

هل تعتقد أن مايلز يستحق العقاب؟ لماذا / ولماذا لا؟

No, he doesn't deserve punishment because he just asked for his home that his brother stole. لا يستحق العقاب لأنه فقط طلب منزله الذي سرقه أخوه.

Chapter (5)



Quotation.

Quotation	Speaker
"Pretend I'm your brother."	Hugo
"We must find your brother a doctor."	The gentleman
"He isn't my brother! He's a thief and I'm the king!"	Edward
"Thief! Thief!"	Hugo
"What's going on?"	Miles
"How did you find me?"	Edward
"You chose a nice fat hen."	Miles
"A man on the road told me he saw two boys. One of the boys said he was the king, so I knew it was you."	Miles
"My brother died in a war in France."	Arthur
"No, he didn't. I am your brother! And this is my home!"	Miles
"How will we get out of here?"	Edward
"Give me time. I'll think of a way."	Miles
"I will punish you both."	The judge
"But the boy is young. He didn't do anything wrong. Don't hurt him."	Miles
"Stop! He is a good man!"	Edward

4 Read the sentences and circle (T) True or (F) False and correct the false ones.

1. Hugo pretended to be very ill and in great pain. (T)
2. The woman had a duck in her basket. (F)

   Correction: hen

Activities On Chapter (5)

1 **Read the sentences and circle (T) True or (F) False and correct the false ones.**

1. Miles told Edward to go with Hugo to beg for money. (T / F)

....

2. Hugo was lying on the ground. (T / F)

....

3. The woman wanted to sell the duck in the market. (T / F)

....

4. Miles shouted, "Thief! Thief!" (T / F)

....

5. The judge put Miles in the stocks. (T / F)

....

6. The prison was a horrible place. (T / F)

....

7. Arthur recognized Miles. (T / F)

....

8. After Miles was released, they went to Paris. (T / F)

....

9. At the market, a woman had a big, black hen. (T / F)

....

10. Arthur said his brother died in the war in Italy. (T / F)

....

Chapter (5)

2 Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "What's going on?" a- Edward
2. "I will punish you both." b- The judge
3. "How did you find me?" c- Miles

---

1. "We must find your brother a doctor." a- Arthur
2. "My brother died in the war in France." b- Edward
3. "Stop! He's a good man!" c- The gentleman

---

1. "How will we get out of here?" a- Miles
2. "But the boy is young. He did nothing wrong." b- Hugo
3. "Thief! Thief!" c- Edward

3 Answer the following questions.

1. Where were John Canty and Edward?

....

2. What did Hugo do when a gentleman came along the road?

....

3. Where did Hugo see the woman with a hen?

....

4. What did Hugo do when he put the hen in Edward's hands?

....

5. Who put Miles in the stocks?

....

6. What did Arthur say about his brother?

....

7. What did people do to Miles when he was in the stocks?

....

8. Where did Miles and Edward go after Miles was released?

....

9. Who did Edward write a letter to?

....

10. How was the prison?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... lay on the ground and pretended to be very ill.

   a) Edward b) Hugo c) Miles d) John Canty

2. When the gentleman came to help, Hugo ....

   a) died b) shouted c) ran off d) sat down

3. The woman wanted to sell the .... at the market.

   a) hen b) duck c) horse d) basket

4. .... gave the woman some money for the hen.

   a) Tom b) Edward c) Miles d) judge

5. The judge put Miles in the ....

   a) house b) palace c) prison d) stocks

6. People threw rotten .... and fruit at Miles.

   a) apples b) eggs c) fish d) meat

7. Miles and Edward went to ....

   a) Paris b) France c) London d) Cairo

Chapter (6)

Vocabulary

get ready	يستعد	Great Seal	الختم الملكي
abbey	كنيسة - دير	mirror	مرآة
be crowned king	يتوج ملكًا	bow	ينحني
brave soldier	جندي شجاع	stay friends	يظل أصدقاء
pleased	مسرور - سعيد	through the door	عبر الباب
instruct	يأمر	on his knees	على ركبتيه

Definitions تعريفات

crowned	a king or queen is crowned when a crown is put on their head in a special ceremony	يتوج
mirror	a glass surface that reflects an image	مرآة

Main points

- At Westminster Palace, Tom was getting ready to be king.

في قصر Westminster كان توم يستعد ليكون الملك.

- Miles and Edward arrived. Edward gave a servant a letter to Lord Hertford.

وصل مايلز وإدوارد. أعطى إدوارد خادمًا رسالة إلى اللورد هيرتفورد.

- Edward walked through the door in his pauper's clothes and Tom kneeled down in front of him.

دخل إدوارد من الباب وهو يرتدي ملابس الفقير وركع توم أمامه.

- Edward helped Tom to his feet. Miles and Lord Hertford were surprised.

ساعد إدوارد توم لينهض على قدميه واندهش مايلز واللورد هيرتفورد

- Tom and Edward had the same hair, same eyes, and same voices.

كان لتوم وإدوارد نفس الشعر ونفس العيون ونفس الأصوات.

- Edward proved that he was the real king. There was a question in the letter he could answer but Tom couldn't.

أثبت إدوارد أنه الملك الحقيقي. كان هناك سؤال في الرسالة يعرف الاجابة عليه لكن توم لا يعرفه.

- The question was, "Where is the Great Seal?" Edward said it was behind the mirror in his bedroom.

كان السؤال "أين الختم الملكي؟" قال إدوارد إنه خلف المرآة في غرفة نومه.

- Edward was crowned king. He and Tom stayed friends.

توج إدوارد ملكاً. وظل هو وتوم أصدقاء.

- Many years later, Tom wrote the story of the Prince and the Pauper.

بعد سنوات عديدة، كتب توم قصة الأمير والفقير.

Chapter 6

At Westminster Palace, Tom was getting ready to be king. Lord Hertford and some other important gentlemen were with him. They were about to leave the palace to go to Westminster Abbey, where Tom would be **crowned** king, when a letter arrived.

"Miles Hendon is here, sir," said the servant as he gave the letter to Lord Hertford. "He says that you know him."

"Yes, I do," said Lord Hertford. "He's a good man and a brave soldier. Is this letter from him?"

"No, sir, it's from the boy."

Tom wondered, could the boy be Edward?

في قصر "Westminister"، كان توم يستعد ليصبح ملكاً. رافقه اللورد هيرتفورد وبعض السادة المهمين، وكانوا على وشك مغادرة القصر متوجهين إلى دير "Westminister" حيث سيُتوَّج توم ملكاً، حين وصلتهم رسالة.

"يا سيدي، مايلز هندون هنا،" قال الخادم وهو يسلم الرسالة للورد هيرتفورد. "يقول إنك تعرفه."

قال اللورد هارتفورد "نعم، أعرفه، إنه رجل طيب وجندي شجاع. هل هذه الرسالة منه؟"

"كلا، يا سيدي، إنها من الصبي."

تساءل توم، هل يمكن أن يكون الصبي هو إدوارد؟



"Bring the boy here," he demanded.

Edward and Miles came into the palace. Edward walked through the door in his pauper's clothes and Tom kneeled down in front of him.

"Your Majesty," he cried. "I am so pleased to see you."

Lord Hertford could not believe his eyes! Why was the king on his knees in front of a pauper?

Edward helped Tom to his feet. They looked at each other and smiled.

Lord Hertford and Miles looked at them both: the same hair, same eyes, and same voices.

"Open the letter," Edward told Lord Hertford.

"There is a question in it that I can answer but Tom here cannot. With my answer you will know that I am really the new king of England."

Lord Hertford did as instructed. "Where is the Great Seal?" he read aloud.

Tom, of course, could not answer.

أمره قائلًا "أحضروا الصبي إلى هنا".

دخل إدوارد ومايلز إلى القصر. مشى إدوارد عبر الباب مرتدياً ثياب الفقير، فركع توم أمامه.

صاح قائلا "جلالتك، أنا سعيد جداً لرؤيتك."

لم يستطع اللورد هيرتفورد تصديق عينيه! لماذا كان الملك راكعاً أمام صبي فقير؟

ساعد إدوارد توم على الوقوف. نظرا إلى بعضهما وابتسما. حدق اللورد هيرتفورد ومايلز بهما معًا: نفس الشعر، نفس العيون، ونفس الصوت.

"افتح الرسالة،" قال إدوارد للورد هارتفورد.

"يوجد في الرسالة سؤال يمكنني أنا الإجابة عنه، لكن توم هنا لا يستطيع. بإجابتي ستعرف أنني أنا الملك الجديد لإنجلترا."

فعل اللورد هيرتفورد ما طُلب منه. وقرأ بصوت عالٍ: "أين الختم الملكي؟"

لم يستطع توم، بالطبع، أن يجيب.

"It's behind the **mirror** in my bedroom," said Edward.

Lord Hertford sent a servant to find the seal. Just as Edward said, it was behind the mirror in his bedroom.

"Your Majesty," Lord Hertford said, bowing to Edward. "Welcome home."

Later that day, Edward was crowned king. He was a good king because he knew how poor people lived. He and Tom stayed friends and, many years later, Tom wrote the story of The Prince and the Pauper.

قال إدوارد: "إنه خلف المرآة في غرفة نومي."

أرسل اللورد هيرتفورد خادماً ليعثر على الختم. وكما قال إدوارد تماماً، كان الختم خلف المرآة في غرفة نومه.

قال اللورد هارتفورد، منحنياً أمام إدوارد: "جلالة الملك، أهلاً بعودتك إلى الوطن."

في وقت لاحق من ذلك اليوم، تُوِّج إدوارد ملكاً. كان ملكاً صالحاً لأنه كان يعرف كيف يعيش الفقراء. ظل هو وتوم صديقين، وبعد سنوات عديدة، كتب توم قصة "الأمير والفقير."

1 Answer the following questions.

1. **What was Tom getting ready to do at Westminster Palace?**

   ماذا كان توم يستعد ليفعله في قصر Westminster؟

   To be crowned king. ان يتوج ملكاً.

2. **Who were with Tom?** من كان مع توم؟

   Lord Hertford and some important gentlemen.

   اللورد هيرتفورد ومجموعة من السادة المهمين.

3. **Who did the servant give the letter to?** إلى من أعطى الخادم الرسالة؟

   To Lord Hertford. إلى اللورد هيرتفورد.

4. **What did Lord Hertford say about Miles?** ماذا قال اللورد هيرتفورد عن مايلز؟

   He said he was a good man and a brave soldier. قال انه رجل طيب وجندي شجاع.

5. **What was Edward wearing when he walked through the door?**

   ماذا كان إدوارد يرتدي عندما دخل من الباب؟

   He was wearing pauper's clothes. كان يرتدي ملابس الفقير.

6. **What did Tom do when he saw Edward?** ماذا فعل توم عندما رأى إدوارد؟

He kneeled down in front of him. ركع امامه.

7. **How were Tom and Edward alike?** كيف كان توم وادوارد متشابهين؟

They had the same hair, same eyes, and same voices.

كان لهم نفس الشعر، نفس العيون ونفس الأصوات.

8. **How could Edward prove that he was the real king of England?**

كيف أثبت إدوارد أنه الملك الحقيقي لانجلترا؟

He knew where the Great Seal was. كان يعرف أين يوجد الختم الملكي.

9. **Where was the Great Seal?** أين يوجد الختم الملكي؟

It was behind the mirror in Edward's bedroom. كان خلف المرآة في غرفة نوم إدوارد.

10. **Who wrote the story of The Prince and the Pauper?**

من كتب قصة الأمير والفقير؟

Tom. توم.



2 Critical Thinking Questions.

1. **Do you think Edward was a good king? Why?**

هل تعتقد أن إدوارد كان ملكاً جيداً؟ لماذا؟

Yes, because he knew how poor people lived.

نعم، لأنه كان يعرف كيف يعيش الفقراء.

2. **How do you think Tom and Edward felt at the end of the story?**

في رأيك كيف شعر توم وادوارد في نهاية القصة؟

I think they felt happy as Tom went home and saw his sisters and mother. Edward became the king of England.

أعتقد أنهما شعرا بالسعادة لأن توم عاد إلى المنزل ورأى أخواته وأمه وأصبح إدوارد ملك انجلترا.

3 Quotations.

Quotation	Speaker
"Miles Hendon is here, Sir. He says that you know him."	The servant
"He's a good man and a brave soldier."	Lord Hertford
"No, Sir. It's from the boy."	The servant
"Bring the boy here."	Lord Hertford
"Your Majesty. I'm so pleased to see you."	Tom
"Open the letter."	Edward
"There's a question in it that I can answer but Tom here cannot."	Edward
"It's behind the mirror in my bedroom."	Edward
"Your Majesty. Welcome home."	Lord Hertford

4 Read the sentences and circle (T) True or (F) False and correct the false ones.

1. Miles is a good man and a brave solider. (T)
2. The Great Seal was in the living room. (F)

   Correction: Edward's bedroom
3. Edward was wearing pauper's clothes. (T)
4. Miles wrote the story The Prince and the Pauper. (F)

   Correction: Tom

Activities On Chapter (6)

1 **Read the sentences and circle (T) True or (F) False and correct the false ones.**

1. The Great Seal is hidden behind the bed. (T / F)

   ....

2. At Southwark Palace, Tom was getting ready to be king. (T / F)

   ....

3. Miles was a brave soldier. (T / F)

   ....

4. Edward was in his Pauper's clothes. (T / F)

   ....

5. Miles kneeled down in front of Edward. (T / F)

   ....

6. Tom could answer the question about the Great Seal. (T / F)

   ....

7. Later that day, Edward was crowned king. (T / F)

   ....

8. Edward and Tom didn't stay friends. (T / F)

   ....

9. Edward was a good king. (T / F)

   ....

10. Edward wrote the story many years later. (T / F)

    ....

2 Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "Bring the boy here."	a- The servant
2. "Open the letter."	b- Edward
3. "No, Sir. It's from the boy."	c- Lord Hertford

1. "Your Majesty. I am so pleased to see you."	a- Lord Hertford
2. "It's behind the mirror in my bedroom."	b- Edward
3. "He's a good man and a brave soldier."	c- Tom

1. "Your Majesty. Welcome home."	a- Edward
2. "Miles Hendon is here, Sir."	b- servant
3. There's a question in it that I can answer."	c- Lord Hertford

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What was happening at Westminster Palace?

....

2. Who did the servant give the letter to?

....

3. What did Lord Hertford send a servant to find in the palace?

....

4. Was Edward a good king? Why?

....

5. How did Edward prove that he was the real king?

....

6. How were Tom and Edward at the end of the story?

....



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... was getting ready to be crowned king.

   a) Edward b) Lord Hertford c) Tom d) Miles

2. Miles was a brave ....

   a) servant b) teacher c) king d) soldier

3. Tom would be crowned king at Westminster ....

   a) House b) Hall c) Bridge d) Abbey

4. Tom kneeled down in front of ....

   a) Edward b) Lord Hertford c) Miles d) servant

5. The Great Seal was behind the .... in Edward's bedroom.

   a) door b) bed c) mirror d) chair

6. Finally, ... was crowned king.

   a) Tom b) Edward c) Miles d) Hugo

7. .... wrote the story many years later.

   a) Miles b) Tom c) Edward d) Hugo

8. Edward knew where the .... was.

   a) mirror b) Great Seal c) king d) door

Revision (B)

Reading SB (P. 138)



How do you think technology will change our lives[1]?
I think that technology will change our lives in many different ways.

Entertainment[2] will change in the future. I think we'll watch 3D movies on tablets in our homes, and when we go to pop concerts[3], there won't be real singers. Computers will make it look like[4] there are singers on the stage[5].

Travel will also change in the future. I think we'll only ride electric bikes and electric scooters[6]. Also, we won't need people to drive streetcars or buses because they will drive themselves.

I also think that sport will change. Scientists are already starting to make equipment[7] that changes the way we play sports. In the future, maybe they'll make special bats[8] that can hit balls harder in baseball or special boards that go faster in skateboarding[9].

(1)	حياتنا	(2)	الترفيه	(3)	حفلات موسيقية
(4)	يشبه	(5)	خشبة المسرح	(6)	سكوتر
(7)	معدات	(8)	مضارب	(9)	التزلج

Reading SB (P. 139)

I enjoy staying healthy. I do karate on Tuesdays and I play table tennis on Thursdays. I also have an app on my smartphone that helps me to stay healthy. I get messages that give me advice, for example, yesterday morning I got a message that said, "You shouldn't go to school by streetcar today. You should go on foot!" While I was watching a movie in the evening, I got another message. It said, "Stop looking at a screen and go outside for some fresh air!"

Review Based On Units (10 - 11)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **Vocabulary**

1. Dad's new .... has got a really big screen.
   a) bike b) engine c) desk computer d) phone
2. Lewis loves playing .... with his friend.
   a) mouse b) stories c) karate d) chess
3. I don't use a .... when I work on my laptop.
   a) screen b) mouse c) camera d) email
4. Lily has a .... match after school on Thursday.
   a) table tennis b) science c) art d) judo
5. Vicky listens to music on her .... every morning on the school bus.
   a) computer b) headphones c) telephones d) screen
6. I think the smartphone is the most important ....
   a) discovery b) engine c) invention d) invitation
7. We use the .... to take photographs.
   a) pen b) car c) digital camera d) computer
8. .... are used to keep food cool.
   a) Fridges b) Cars c) Stoves d) Ovens
9. My laptop is really slow. I think it needs a new ....
   a) screen b) battery c) wheel d) mouse
10. Morgan flew to New York in the biggest .... I've ever seen!
    a) car b) bus c) airplane d) streetcar
11. The .... of my smartphone is broken.
    a) keys b) screen c) mouse d) buttons
12. We use the .... to talk to people in a different place.
    a) tablet b) drone c) telephone d) engine
13. "........................" means to invent and make something new.
    a) Design b) Solve c) Notice d) Take
14. Computer .... is the language we use to write computer programs.
    a) name b) app c) programmer d) code

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **Grammar**

1. My lunch, ... was a Greek salad, was delicious.
   a) who b) which c) when d) where
2. Tom, ... wants to buy a new tablet, is at the shopping mall.
   a) who b) where c) which d) whose
3. The town .... I went to school is very old.
   a) which b) where c) who d) when
4. We went for a walk last weekend .... I visited my aunt.
   a) which b) who c) when d) whose
5. That's the person .... helped me with my shopping bags.
   a) who b) when c) which d) whose
6. The book, ... Dean chose for me, was really interesting.
   a) who b) when c) which d) that
7. This article .... by a famous writer.
   a) write b) was written c) are written d) wrote
8. Is music .... in your school?
   a) teaching b) taught c) teacher d) teaches
9. We should help people .... need help.
   a) whose b) where c) who d) which
10. Bicycles .... in that building before it closed.
    a) make b) are made c) were made d) making
11. Football .... all over the world.
    a) played b) is played c) is playing d) plays
12. This article was written by a researcher .... studies animals.
    a) who b) which c) where d) when

3 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box.

1. This article .... (write) by a famous inventor.
2. Smartwatches .... (use) to see how far people walk a day.
3. These photographs of whales .... (take) with an underwater camera.
4. The forest .... (protect) and the trees are very old.
5. This fruit .... (grow) in Costa Rica, and it's delicious!
6. I wonder how many parcels .... (deliver) in the post every day!
7. The telephone .... (invent) in 1876.

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

Lessons (1 & 2)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

We're here in Edinburgh, Scotland. There was a lot of traffic on our trip to the airport and we almost didn't arrive in time for our flight! Then, when we arrived here, we didn't have all our luggage. My suitcase was still in Frankfurt!

Lesson (3)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

This summer my parents and I went to Rome on vacation. It's a wonderful city. We went sightseeing and saw some amazing old buildings. It's a really good idea to go on a tour with a tour guide—they can tell you all about the history. We also visited Positano on the Amalfi Coast. My mom said Positano was her favorite part of the trip. It is a beautiful fishing village with lots of pretty houses.

Test Based On Unit (7)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Cape Town is a beautiful city on the coast of South Africa. It is a very popular place for tourists because there are many things to do there. The city is famous for its mountain. It's called Table Mountain and the views from the top are amazing! You can walk or you can take the cablecar up to the top.

Unit (8)

Lessons (1 & 2)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Today, we're at the biggest pop concert of the year! Most singers arrived last night, but some are arriving by helicopter this morning. I can hear some people arriving on noisy motorbikes too. The park is a short walk from the train and bus stations, so most people are coming here on foot from the stations. Others are riding bikes. Everyone is happy and excited. It's going to be a great day!

Lessons (4 & 5)

Camels are often called the "ships of the desert" because they can carry people and heavy goods across large desert areas, such as those in Morocco. They can carry up to 551 pounds on their backs and can travel up to 25 miles a day, even in very dry and hot climates, because they don't need to drink a lot of water.

Test Based On Unit (8)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hong Kong is a city of 263 islands, amazing mountains, and beautiful beaches with so much to see. It is also one of the greenest cities in the world. Only 25% of the land has buildings and houses. So, the best way to see the area and this beautiful city is by helicopter! You can see the tall city buildings, the beautiful beaches, and the islands from the air!

Unit (9)

Lessons (1 & 2)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The penguin's a bird that always lives near the sea. It can swim and it can also walk. It doesn't walk very well because it has legs that are really short. It likes to eat fish. Climate change is this animal's biggest problem.

Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

A sculpture is a 3D model of something. It can be big or small. People have made sculptures of animals for thousands of years. They have used stone and expensive metals like gold to make sculptures of animals that were important to them. In New York, there is a large sculpture of three rhinos. The sculpture is called "The Last Three" and it has an important message: Many animals are in danger, and we must protect them.

Test Based On Unit (9)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Today is the last day you can buy tickets for the most popular pop concert of the year. Party in the Park starts at 3 p.m. on Saturday June 8th and finishes at midnight on Sunday June 9th. Tickets are selling fast. This year it's bigger, better, and more exciting than ever before. There are more than 60 bands playing lots of different music.

Unit (10)

Lessons (1 & 2)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The information we can find on the internet isn't always correct. Good websites are where we must look. Look at more than one website and check that the information is correct. Speak to your parents or teachers, who you can trust, if you need help.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

My school in Kasoa makes its own energy! The school principal put solar panels on my school in 2019. This technology makes electricity for the whole school. I think that it's great because we are showing the whole country, and also the whole world, how renewable energy can really work!

Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name is Radwa and my favorite subject at school is computer studies! At the moment, we are learning how to write computer code. It's a bit like learning a foreign language. Last week, I made my own story with a funny cat! I'm going to be a computer programmer when I grow up and design and build my own apps!

Test Based On Unit (10)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

At a school in Canterbury, England, the students walk quickly from class to class. Why? The school has a special floor that makes electricity for the school lights. When the students' feet hit the floor, they make energy. The energy they make in one year can charge over 850 cell phones or drive an electric car seven miles!

Unit (11)

Lessons (1 & 2)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The car is a very important invention because it changed how we travel. Before it was invented, people traveled on foot or on horses. They're kinds of transportation. Today, cars are used by people all over the world. In the past, engines were invented so that cars could move.

Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Science Museum in London is a fantastic place to visit. You can see lots of exciting exhibitions about the newest inventions. There is also information that helps you understand more about nature. It's an exciting place to spend a day and to learn about everything from gadgets to space travel.

Test Based On Unit (11)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The telegraph was invented in the 1830s, as a solution to the problem of how long letters took to arrive. It used a special machine to send messages to another telegraph station quickly. And, of course, when the telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876, we could speak to people all over the world.

AL-BAHER

Hello! PLUS

Beyond Words

Final Revision

الصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



1st Prep
Second Term

Review Based On Unit (7)

Vocabulary

travel	السفر	tour	جولة
castle	قلعة	palace	قصر
flight	رحلة جوية	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
luggage	أمتعة	clear	صافٍ
sightseeing	مشاهدة المعالم السياحية	go diving	يغوص
traffic	حركة المرور	tent	خيمة
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	nature	الطبيعة
tourist	سائح	national park	حديقة طبيعية
river cruise	رحلة نهرية	scenery	مناظر طبيعية
go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	ecosystem	نظام بيئي
stay for a night	يقيم ليلة	waterfalls	شلالات

History

explore	يستكشف	tourism	السياحة
Romans	الرومان	cozy	مريح ودافئ
lasting	دائم	original	أصلي
impact	تأثير	cable car	التلفريك
techniques	أساليب	mountain	جبل
sculptures	منحوتات	waterfalls	شلالات
railway	سكة حديد	enormous	ضخم
a guide	دليل	go camping	يخيم / يعسكر

Grammar

Reported speech

She said, "I don't like pizza."

She said (that) she didn't like pizza.

Speaking

A) Would you like to go swimming? B) I'm not sure. I'd prefer not to go out.

A) Let's watch a movie at home. B) I agree.

General Exercises on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I went to Paris by plane. I was very excited during the ....
   a) journey b) flight c) trip d) match
2. There was a lot of .... on the road because there was an accident.
   a) traffic b) tourists c) animals d) luggage
3. I bought you a T-shirt as a .... when I was in Rome.
   a) prize b) souvenir c) trip d) price
4. A .... is an animal that often lives in the desert.
   a) horse b) lion c) camel d) cat
5. You can sleep in a .... while camping.
   a) bed b) room c) hotel d) tent
6. A .... shows tourists around a place.
   a) teacher b) tour guide c) nurse d) pilot
7. The water in the lake is .... I can see through it.
   a) dark b) milky c) hot d) clear
8. The word .... means very warm, safe, and comfortable.
   a) high b) cozy c) great d) original
9. When we went to Paris, we went .... looking at the famous buildings in the city.
   a) shopping b) sightseeing c) swimming d) camping
10. Egypt is full of historical ....
    a) sites b) sight c) farms d) rivers
11. You can do a river ....
    a) journey b) hotel c) cruise d) trip
12. We live in the 21st ....
    a) year b) century c) decade d) month

Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He told me that he .... on vacation.
   a) is b) was c) are d) did
2. She .... that she was going to Spain.
   a) say b) says c) said d) told
3. Ahmed said that he .... like pizza.
   a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) isn't
4. He said that he enjoyed .... tour.
   a) he b) him c) my d) his
5. Mayar said that she .... get her brother a T-shirt.
   a) will b) can c) should d) can't
6. He .... that we should try the new restaurant.
   a) told b) suggested c) say d) asked
7. They .... that they had stolen the money.
   a) suggested b) asked c) admitted d) told
8. I told her that the castle .... beautiful.
   a) is b) was c) did d) has
9. He said .... he loved visiting castles.
   a) that b) this c) then d) these
10. Rehab .... her sister that she was going to Cairo.
    a) said b) told c) asked d) advised
11. She said the food .... wonderful.
    a) is b) did c) can be d) was
12. The teacher .... us about the new student.
    a) suggested b) asked c) told d) said

2 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Mona said that she .... (don't) like fish.
2. Mom .... (said) us that she was going shopping.
3. Ali said that he .... (can) speak English.
4. He said he .... (loves) relaxing on the beach.
5. The teacher said the Nile .... (be) the longest river in the world.

Review Based On Unit (8)

Vocabulary

transportation	وسائل النقل والمواصلات	motor	موتور
airplane	طائرة	batteries	بطاريات
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	announcement	إعلان
on foot	مشياً على الأقدام	delay	تأخير
scooter	سكوتر	passengers	مسافرون - ركاب
helicopter	مروحية	platform	رصيف القطار
streetcar	ترام	tour	جولة
electric	كهربي	tickets	تذاكر
engine	محرك	book (v)	يحجز
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	per person	للفرد الواحد
tourist	سائح	groups	مجموعات
plans	خطط	flight	رحلة طيران
wealthy	ثري	fascinated by	مبهور بـ
pilot	طيار	education	تعليم
hot air balloon	منطاد	Atlantic Ocean	المحيط الأطلسي
goods	بضائع	pound	رطل

Grammar

"Present Perfect Continuous"

e.g. How long have you been playing tennis?

e.g. I have been reading this book since Tuesday.

e.g. She has been cleaning the house for two hours.

Speaking

Making suggestions	Vacation plans
- Would you like to + inf. ... ?	- I plan to + inf. ... .
- How / What about + v + ing ... ?	- I'd like to go ... .
- You could + inf.	- I really want to visit ... .

General Exercises on Unit (8)

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I go to school .... It's not far.
   a) by airplane b) by bus c) on foot d) by helicopter
2. We travel by .... to other countries.
   a) bike b) scooter c) airplane d) motorbike
3. .... scooters are almost as popular as bikes.
   a) Gas b) Electric c) Wind d) Solar
4. We like traveling around the city by ....
   a) foot b) airplane c) streetcar d) helicopter
5. Menna didn't know how to get .... the city, so she took a taxi.
   a) off b) on c) back d) around
6. Let's get .... the bus and sit by the window.
   a) on b) off c) back d) in
7. When there is a .... , the train is late.
   a) delete b) wind c) delay d) rain
8. A .... is a person who visits new places.
   a) tour b) tourist c) doctor d) tour guide
9. I'm going to .... a ticket to watch the match.
   a) do b) make c) book d) watch
10. My mom likes to .... a city break.
    a) make b) take c) do d) give
11. The train .... at 7 am and gets back at 8 pm.
    a) flies b) leaves c) lives d) drives
12. You can go on a .... trip around the city.
    a) bus b) plane c) camel d) ship

Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I've .... flowers in the garden for two hours.
   a) plant b) plants c) been planting d) planting
2. We .... in Aswan since 2020.
   a) lived b) are living c) have been living d) live
3. I .... riding a motorbike to work for five years.
   a) has b) has been c) have been d) am
4. They .... together for three years.
   a) are studying b) study c) have been studying d) studied
5. Sara .... been going to this school for two years.
   a) have b) is c) has d) does
6. Mom has been cooking lunch .... afternoon.
   a) for b) since c) in d) by
7. How .... have you been living in this house?
   a) many b) much c) long d) after
8. Dad has .... ill for two days.
   a) been b) being c) been being d) be
9. I've been living in Alex since I ....
   a) born b) was born c) have been born d) am born
10. Ziad has been studying English .... last week.
    a) in b) for c) since d) at
11. I've been learning English .... a long time.
    a) since b) ever c) for d) to
12. It .... hot all week.
    a) was b) is c) have been d) has been

2 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. She has .... (go) to that school for six years now.
2. I .... (read) a story all day.
3. Mom .... (clean) the house. It's very clean now.
4. It .... (rain) all night.
5. .... (How many) have you been learning French?

Review Based On Unit (9)

Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
elephant	فيل	pharmacist	صيدلي
behavior	سلوك	human beings	البشر
penguin	بطريق	deep	عميق
snow leopard	نمر الثلوج	cave paintings	فن الرسم في الكهوف
forest	غابة	patterns	أنماط - زخارف
jungle	أدغال	skilled	ماهر
eagle	نسر	sculpture	تمثال منحوت
ethologist	عالم سلوك الحيوان	research	بحث
domestic	منزلي - أليف	rhino	وحيد القرن - كركدن
rescue	ينقذ	various	مختلف
climate change	تغير المناخ	conservationist	ناشط بيئي
seal	فقمة	artist	فنان - رسام
essential	ضروري	In my opinion	في رأيي
carrier pigeons	الحمام الزاجل	cute	جذاب - جميل

Grammar

Relative Clauses

e.g. People who / that **study animals have to spend a lot of time outside.**

e.g. Plants which / that **grow in deserts don't need a lot of water.**

Speaking

Explaining a point of view

- Do you mean .... ?	- I believe ....
- I'm afraid I don't understand.	- In my opinion
- I'm glad you asked me that. Well,....	- I think ....

General Exercises on Unit (9)

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A/An .... is a person who studies animal behavior.
   a) scientist b) ethologist c) doctor d) biologist
2. We can train pets and .... animals to behave in certain ways.
   a) domestic b) wild c) scary d) dangerous
3. We are studying animals closely to see how they ....
   a) run b) behave c) behavior d) eat
4. We believe that when cats are happy, they ....
   a) jump b) run c) scream d) purr
5. Carrier .... were used to send messages.
   a) birds b) pigeons c) crows d) eagles
6. .... are black and white and live in the forest.
   a) Tigers b) Snow leopards c) Pandas d) Toads
7. Scientists are working hard to .... animals that are in danger.
   a) rescue b) kill c) live d) safe
8. Scientists are using sea lions and seals as ....
   a) doctors b) researchers c) artists d) searches
9. I'm .... I don't understand what you mean.
   a) glad b) happy c) afraid d) scared
10. We can ask the .... about medicines.
    a) carpenter b) teacher c) pharmacist d) driver
11. The word .... is opposite to "ugly".
    a) sad b) cute c) glad d) big
12. In my .... , we must protect animals.
    a) opinion b) part c) think d) pocket

Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The penguin is a bird .... always lives near the sea.
   a) that b) who c) when d) where
2. Elephants are animals .... seem to love each other.
   a) who b) which c) whose d) whom
3. People .... study animals are scientists.
   a) what b) which c) who d) when
4. The scientists .... found the snakes gave them scientific names.
   a) who b) which c) when d) where
5. That is the book .... my sister has just read.
   a) who b) what c) where d) which
6. The boy .... sits next to me in class is good at math.
   a) which b) that c) when d) whom
7. The tiger is an animal .... lives in forests.
   a) who b) which c) where d) whose
8. The woman .... lives next door is a vet.
   a) which b) whose c) where d) that
9. My uncle is the man .... has short black hair.
   a) who b) which c) whom d) where
10. The movie .... I watched last night was boring.
    a) who b) when c) which d) where
11. Plants .... grow in the desert don't need a lot of water.
    a) that b) where c) when d) who
12. Whales are animals .... live in large family groups.
    a) who b) where c) when d) that

2 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Children .... (which) have watched the movie are very happy.
2. People cut down trees .... (who) the panda eats.
3. Trees .... (where) grow in jungles are usually tall.
4. A carpenter is a person .... (which) makes chairs and tables.
5. An ethologist is a person .... (whom) studies animal behavior.

Review Based On Unit (10)

Vocabulary

technology	التكنولوجيا	wind farms	محطات الرياح
devices	أجهزة	turn into	يتحول إلى
apps	التطبيقات	at rush hour	في ساعة الذروة
headphones	سماعات الرأس	phone call	مكالمة هاتفية
screens	شاشات	do the washing	ينظف الملابس
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	make electricity	يصنع الكهرباء
eye-contact	تواصل بصري	computer studies	مادة الكمبيوتر
modern age	العصر الحديث	online learning	التعلم الإلكتروني
drones	طائرات بدون طيار	instructions	تعليمات
transportation	المواصلات	grades	درجات
human energy	طاقة بشرية	computer code	لغة الكمبيوتر
solar panels	الألواح الشمسية	computer programmer	مبرمج الكمبيوتر
charge a battery	يشحن البطارية	in person	شخصيا
floor	طابق	education	التعليم
renewable	متجدد	blended learning	التعلم المدمج

Grammar

Relative clauses

- The city where I live is on the coast.
- My sister, who lives in London, is younger than me.
- The park, where she played as a child, is now a housing development.
- Next summer, when I go to Australia, I will learn to surf.
- This is the woman whose son is my friend.

Speaking

Giving instructions

- First, open your internet program.
- Next, type what you want.
- Then, choose a photograph.
- Finally, click on the button "Print".

General Exercises on Unit (10)

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A/An .... is a computer program you use to do an activity, often on smartphones.
   a) device b) app c) screen d) tablet
2. You can listen to music with ....
   a) websites b) screens c) headphones d) apps
3. You can find information on a ....
   a) car b) website c) device d) desk
4. My tablet isn't working. The .... is black.
   a) mouse b) app c) screen d) computer
5. Facebook and Instagram are ....
   a) social media b) websites c) devices d) headphones
6. I like .... funny photographs online.
   a) writing b) reading c) sharing d) dividing
7. Our laptops and smartphones need .... to work.
   a) water b) energy c) wind d) petrol
8. .... energy is better for the environment.
   a) Electric b) Non-renewable c) Renewable d) Gas
9. On windy days, our wind .... makes electricity.
   a) machines b) panels c) farm d) plant
10. He .... his laptop and opened the Internet.
    a) clicked b) turned on c) touched d) tapped
11. You always need energy for your cellphone ....
    a) screen b) mouse c) battery d) camera
12. We have better .... because of technology.
    a) air b) education c) food d) free time

Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This is a taxi .... doesn't need a driver.
   a) who b) which c) when d) whom
2. That's the place .... I had my birthday party last year.
   a) which b) who c) that d) where
3. My friend Wael is the person .... helped me learn to play tennis.
   a) whom b) who c) whose d) when
4. Do you remember the time .... we went to the zoo?
   a) when b) where c) which d) who
5. The man .... car is black lives in our neighborhood.
   a) who b) which c) whose d) where
6. Adam, ... is my best friend, plays volleyball.
   a) which b) who c) that d) whose
7. The city .... I was born is on the coast.
   a) when b) where c) who d) which
8. Ramadan is the month .... we fast.
   a) who b) which c) whose d) when
9. My grandpa, ... lives in Alex, is 80 years old.
   a) which b) that c) who d) where
10. The room .... I stayed was quiet.
    a) when b) which c) where d) who
11. The bag .... he bought was blue and white.
    a) when b) which c) who d) whose
12. The car .... color is red hit a boy yesterday.
    a) which b) whose c) where d) when

2 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. My uncle, ... (that) lives in London, is a doctor.
2. The park .... (which) we play football is next to our school.
3. My dad, ... (that) was born in 1970, is a teacher.
4. This is the woman .... (whose) won the competition.
5. These headphones, ... (where) are black, are really good.

Review Based On Unit (11)

Vocabulary

inventions	اختراعات	sonar machine	جهاز السونار
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	inventor	مخترع
engine	محرك	sound	صوت
wheel	عجلة	bullet train	القطار السريع
solution	حل	tunnel	نفق
research	بحث	beak	منقار
gadget	أداة	design	تصميم
smartwatch	ساعة ذكية	Velcro	فيلكرو
telegraph	التلغراف	hook	خطاف
deliver	يوصل	scroll	لفافة
post-mail	بريد	cloth	قماش
communication	اتصال	paper	ورق
develop	يطور	wireless	لاسلكي
laboratory	مختبر - معمل	rope	حبل
flippers	زعانف	museum	متحف
national	قومي	exhibition	معرض
store(d)	يخزن	papyrus	ورق البردي

Grammar

The Passive

Object + (am / is / are) مضارع بسيط / (was / were) ماضي بسيط + P.P + (by + subject)

- Smartphones are used to send messages.
- The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.
- Is music taught at your school?
- German isn't spoken in many countries.

Speaking

I'm here today to talk about	Firstly, I'd like to talk about ....
My next point is that	Finally, ...
Thank you for listening.	Do you have any questions?

General Exercises on Unit (11)

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... is something that is difficult or makes you worry.
   a) drone b) problem c) device d) wheel
2. A .... is an answer to a question or something that is difficult.
   a) research b) invention c) solution d) problem
3. We use a digital .... to take photographs.
   a) phone b) camera c) device d) drone
4. Scientists .... things to make our lives easier.
   a) get b) take c) fix d) invent
5. We use a .... to keep food cold.
   a) fridge b) smartphone c) wheel d) cooker
6. The telegraph was .... in the 1830s.
   a) done b) designed c) invented d) invited
7. The word "deliver" is the opposite of ....
   a) give b) receive c) make d) hand
8. A/An .... is a place where scientists often work.
   a) laboratory b) shop c) school d) bank
9. The kingfisher has a long, thin ....
   a) head b) leg c) beak d) peak
10. The word "lastly" is a synonym of ....
    a) firstly b) secondly c) quickly d) finally
11. .... is a thick water plant used for writing on by the Ancient Egyptians.
    a) Paper b) Papyrus c) Pepper d) Pollen
12. .... is a material made from cotton or wool.
    a) Plastic b) Scroll c) Clothes d) Cloth

Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. That book .... two years ago.
   a) write b) writes c) wrote d) was written
2. The first email .... in 1971.
   a) is sent b) was sent c) will send d) is sending
3. Only a few letters .... these days.
   a) are delivered b) delivered c) were delivered d) delivering
4. .... pizzas made for the first time in Italy?
   a) Did b) Was c) Were d) Do
5. Lots of modern cars that .... today have electric batteries.
   a) sell b) are selling c) is sold d) are sold
6. The wheel .... a very long time ago.
   a) is invented b) invented c) was invented d) invent
7. That school .... in the 1990s.
   a) built b) is built c) was built d) is building
8. The parcels .... this morning.
   a) deliver b) delivering c) weren't delivered d) delivers
9. Smartphones .... to take photographs.
   a) uses b) use c) are used d) are using
10. Cotton .... in Egypt.
    a) is grown b) is growing c) grown d) were grown
11. Is German .... in your school?
    a) teach b) teaches c) taught d) teaching
12. The car was repaired .... the mechanic.
    a) in b) with c) for d) by

2 Complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. This novel .... (write) by Charles Dickens.
2. The telephone was invented .... (with) Alexander Graham Bell.
3. Smartwatches .... (wear) by a lot of people.
4. Lots of trips .... (make) by bikes.
5. My room .... (clean) yesterday.

General Questions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Uluru is in ....
   a) France b) Rome c) Australia d) Britain
2. It's a very important part of Australian ....
   a) math b) culture c) farming d) language
3. We should go on a .... trip.
   a) camel b) horse c) bus d) bike
4. We stayed in a .... for a night in the desert.
   a) room b) hotel c) tent d) camp

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I've been riding a .... for four years.
   a) bike b) car c) motorbike d) scooter
2. Motorbikes are .... for the planet.
   a) good b) bad c) nice d) useful
3. They are very ....
   a) big b) expensive c) noisy d) small
4. I want to get an electric .... instead.
   a) bike b) car c) streetcar d) scooter

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Scientists study .... and the world around us.
   a) science b) math c) biology d) Arabic
2. They do important ....
   a) things b) projects c) parks d) cities
3. Around .... of our world is covered in water.
   a) 50% b) 60% c) 70% d) 80%
4. Some areas of the sea are so ....
   a) far b) deep c) cold d) nice

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Omar thinks .... learning is good.
   a) active b) blended c) offline d) building
2. You can learn .... on some days.
   a) offline b) online c) outside d) inside
3. You can talk to .... online.
   a) doctors b) family c) teachers d) nurses
4. Some students live .... from a school.
   a) near b) next c) beside d) far away

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... is a very fast bird.
   a) whale b) kingfisher c) tiger d) penguin
2. It goes into water to .... fish.
   a) catch b) hold c) clean d) eat
3. It has a long thin ....
   a) tail b) leg c) beak d) feather
4. The water doesn't .... very much.
   a) rise b) fall c) boil d) move

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

Vocabulary

1. If you go .... , you swim under the water.
   a) swimming b) diving c) camping d) fishing
2. We're at the airport waiting for our ....
   a) bus b) journey c) flight d) hotel
3. We went .... and saw some amazing old buildings.
   a) fishing b) sightseeing c) sites d) seeing
4. .... is very important to Sicily. Many people visit the island every year.
   a) Traffic b) Learning c) Farming d) Tourism
5. .... means very warm, safe and comfortable.
   a) Cozy b) Original c) Wonderful d) Oriental

General Questions

6. I'm going on .... to Mexico.
   a) shopping b) vacation c) swimming d) walk
7. I bought some .... when I was in Paris.
   a) souvenirs b) animals c) flights d) traffic
8. You can go .... a camel trip.
   a) in b) to c) on d) by
9. You can sleep in a .... in the desert.
   a) hotel b) tent c) room d) flat
10. Cairo is the .... of Egypt.
   a) city b) town c) capital d) port
11. We live in the 21st ....
   a) year b) decade c) century d) country
12. We can .... the morning train at 6 a.m.
   a) drive b) fly c) catch d) hold
13. In Cape Town, you can take the .... up to the top.
   a) bus b) train c) cable car d) bike

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. I like traveling around the city by ....
   a) plane b) ship c) streetcar d) horse
2. Electric .... are easy to ride and park.
   a) buses b) scooters c) bikes d) trains
3. If you get .... early from school, please can you make dinner?
   a) on b) around c) back d) off
4. A .... is a person who shows visitors around a place.
   a) tour b) driver c) tour guide d) tourist
5. My dad is going to .... a vacation.
   a) play b) book c) say d) go
6. .... are the people who are traveling.
   a) Teachers b) Swimmers c) Passengers d) Passages

7. You can .... new friends at the club.
   a) do   b) make   c) take   d) give
8. The word " .... " is the opposite of "quiet".
   a) noisy   b) nosy   c) calm   d) quit
9. Which .... does the train to Luxor leave from?
   a) way   b) road   c) pavement   d) platform
10. The ticket is 20 pounds .... person.
   a) with   b) per   c) by   d) at
11. We got .... the city by bike.
   a) around   b) back   c) up   d) off
12 The suffix " .... " makes the adjective from "use".
   a) -ed   b) -ful   c) -er   d) -ist
13. Lotfia El Nadi was .... by the idea of flying.
   a) fascinated   b) excited   c) wonderful   d) interested

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Elephants share many types of .... with people.
   a) food   b) behavior   c) learning   d) life
2. This project helped us get .... information about the sea.
   a) behave   b) big   c) essential   d) machine
3. Carrier .... were used to send messages.
   a) hens   b) pigeons   c) penguins   d) eagles
4. People who study nature and the world are called ....
   a) teachers   b) artists   c) scientists   d) farmers
5. .... mean designs of lines, shapes and colors.
   a) Patterns   b) Skilled   c) Ancient   d) Pots
6. The .... is very hot and dry.
   a) sea   b) desert   c) dessert   d) farm

General Questions

7. A/An .... is a person who studies animal behavior.
   a) doctor b) biologist c) ethologist d) scientist
8. A .... animal lives in nature and hasn't been tamed by humans.
   a) pet b) wild c) domestic d) tame
9. People .... the trees which animals eat.
   a) cut out b) cut down c) cut by d) cut off
10. There are .... boys in the class.
    a) little b) a few c) much d) any
11. Some animals are in .... of losing their home.
    a) danger b) endangered c) dangerous d) endanger
12. People use many ways to .... each other today.
    a) connect b) contact c) correct d) link
13. The word " .... " means very, very small.
    a) tiny b) huge c) exist d) skilled

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Tablets and smartphones are ....
   a) devices b) apps c) machines d) advice
2. We must look for good .... to get information.
   a) websites b) screens c) social media d) sights
3. The sun and wind are sources of .... energy.
   a) tidal b) non-renewable c) renewable d) electronic
4. I need to .... my cell phone. It doesn't work.
   a) charge b) make c) solve d) break
5. I .... an app that helps me with my English.
   a) clicked b) turned off c) downloaded d) wrote
6. The .... is the part of a computer that we look at.
   a) mouse b) screen c) keyboard d) tablet

7. Put your phone .... when you cross the street.

a) in b) to c) away d) way

8. A/An .... is a place on the Internet where we find information.

a) app b) tablet c) website d). page

9. We must .... the rules at school.

a) follow b) play c) give d) below

10. I .... my headphones to listen to music.

a) dress b) put c) wear d) turn

11. Can you .... the TV? I want to watch the news.

a) make b) charge c) contact d) turn on

12. To send a message on your phone, ... the "send" button.

a) click b) tap c) turn d) give

13. Mom is sweeping the ....

a) floor b) flour c) flower d) flood

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. A .... can fly in the air.

a) wheel b) drone c) fridge d) camera

2. The word .... means to make something new.

a) learn b) discover c) invent d) problem

3. Scientists are trying to find .... to problems.

a) responses b) solutions c) questions d) words

4. A/An .... is a bridge that helps water move from one place to another.

a) river b) canal c) wind catcher d) aqueduct

5. Thank you .... your help.

a) to b) for c) on d) with

6. Thanks to technology, we can keep in .... with our friends.

a) touch b) hear c) communication d) torch

General Questions

7. It's .... easy today to send messages.

a) has b) send c) play d) turn

8. A/An .... is a small machine that does something useful.

a) car b) bag c) gadget d) plane

9. A lot of inventors' ideas come from ....

a) nature b) natural c) schools d) TV

10. Scientists sometimes work in a ....

a) farm b) laboratory c) school d) theatre

11. A / An .... is the part that makes the car move.

a) door b) wing c) wheel d) engine

12. We use a .... camera to take photos.

a) digital b) dragging c) number d) solar

13. It doesn't cost anything to visit the museum. It's ....

a) free b) busy c) expensive d) high

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

souvenir - hotel - flight - bus - sightseeing

Dear Arthur,

We're here in Edinburgh, Scotland. There was a lot of traffic on our trip to the airport, and we almost didn't arrive in time for our 1)................ ! Then, when we arrived here, we didn't have all our luggage. My suitcase was still in Frankfurt!

Our 2)................ is great. Today, we all went on a trip by 3)................ to the city center. We went sightseeing for hours, looking at the famous buildings and. of course, the castle. There were lots of tourists there from all over the world. I bought you a T-shirt as a 4)................ . I'll give it to you when I get back.

See you next week!

William

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

bikes - stations - motorbikes - exciting - excited

Today, we're at the biggest pop concert of the year! Most singers arrived last night, but some are arriving by helicopter this morning. I can hear some people arriving on noisy 1)................................, too. The park is a short walk from the train and bus 2)................................, so most people are coming here on foot from the stations. Others are riding 3)................................. Everyone is happy and 4)................................. It's going to be a great day!

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

purr - domestic - around - behavior - away

An ethologist is a person who studies animal 1)................................. We've always known that we can train pets and 2)................................ animals to behave in certain ways. For example, we can train animals to help blind people move 3)................................ We can also guess how pets are feeling. For example, we believe that when cats are happy, they 4)................................

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

websites - who - at - which - information

I get information from the internet for my school projects. The 1)________________ we can find on the internet isn't always correct. Good 2)__________ are where we must look. Look 3)................................ more than one website and check that the information is correct. Speak to your parents or teachers, 4)______________ you can trust if you need help.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

solution - away - problem - invent - way

Why do people make inventions? Sometimes, there is a 1)................... we want to do something, and we can't. For example, in the past, it was difficult to talk to people who were far 2)................................. The telephone was a 3)________________ to this problem. So, scientists 4)................................things to make our lives easier. It can take a long time to make a new invention perfect, because it's important to find out the best way to make something.

General Questions



Read the following text then answer the questions.

My friend, Maya, visited Spain last year and she told me about her trip. She said that it was a beautiful country and she told me that she enjoyed her trip. So this summer, my family decided to do the same tour of Spain. We started in the north in Barcelona. There were a lot of tourists, so it was very busy! We did some shopping, as Barcelona is famous for its shops. Then we spent a day at the beach. Our last day we spent was at Guell Park. It's beautiful and decorated in colorful mosaics by famous artist Antoni Gaudi. It's so famous and special. It's a UNESCO World Heritage site.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Maya went to .... last year.
   a) Paris b) Italy c) Spain d) Sudan
2. The underlined word "busy" means ....
   a) big b) nice c) free d) crowded

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How much time did they spend on the beach? ....
4. What is Barcelona famous for? ....
5. Give a suitable title to the text. ....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "she" refer to? ....

- Read the following text then answer the questions.

There is a new technology that makes electricity from the energy of the sea. This technology is a machine that has got two parts. One part of it sits at the bottom of the sea. It can be as deep as 25 meters. The second part of the machine is at the top of the sea. It is under the water, but you can see it. This second part of the machine moves with the water. As the sea moves, the machine uses the energy of the sea to make electricity. This is renewable, clean energy and it doesn't hurt any sea animals, so it isn't bad for the environment.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. This new technology makes .... from the energy of the sea.

   a) power b) electricity c) wind d) sunlight

2. The underlined word "renewable" is the antonym of ....

   a) old b) non-renewable c) modern d) clean

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do you think of this energy? ....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to? ....
5. How many parts does the machine have? ....
6. Is this energy good for the environment? Why? ....

- Read the following text then answer the questions.

My name is Anna and I'm 13. I'm friendly and kind. I like meeting new people. My best friends are Harriet and Kim. Harriet is clever. She wants to be an engineer when she leaves school. Kim is very kind and funny. She always makes everyone laugh. We enjoy playing board games and watching films together. I play a lot of sport and I go skateboarding every week. I also eat a healthy diet. My favorite dish is chicken salad. I go to school on foot every day. We have to wear a school uniform.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Anna has .... best friends.

   a) one b) three c) four d) two

2. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to ....

   a) Anna b) Kim c) Harriet d) engineer

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is Anna like? ....
4. What does Harriet want to be? ....
5. How does Anna go to school? ....
6. What sport does Anna do every week? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Grammar

1. Nancy said that she .... Paris.
   a) love b) loves c) loved d) loving
2. Mayar .... her dad that she was going to school.
   a) said b) told c) asked d) tells
3. I'd prefer .... out tonight.
   a) go b) going c) to go d) to going
4. Samer said that .... dad was at work.
   a) he b) his c) him d) she
5. The teacher told us that the Earth .... around the sun.
   a) go b) going c) went d) goes
6. Mom said she .... go to the museum.
   a) wasn't b) didn't c) doesn't d) isn't
7. He .... me that he would buy a car.
   a) said b) asked c) suggested d) told
8. Dad said that the flight .... late.
   a) is b) was c) are d) were
9. Mona said that .... was going to school.
   a) she b) he c) I d) her
10. I .... him that the match was cancelled.
    a) said b) told c) asked d) ordered
11. Tamer said that he .... late for school.
    a) am b) is c) was d) did
12. She said that she .... written a story.
    a) had b) has c) is having d) have
13. The teacher said the Nile .... the largest river in the world.
    a) was b) were c) is d) did

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... in Paris since last month.
   a) am living b) lived c) have been living d) live
2. He .... all day. He looks very tired.
   a) is working b) works c) has been working d) worked
3. How .... have you been ill? For a week.
   a) many b) long c) far d) much
4. Mom has been cooking .... 2 o'clock.
   a) since b) for c) at d) in
5. I .... for the bus for a long time.
   a) has waited b) waiting c) have been waiting d) waited
6. Ali .... been riding his bike for two hours.
   a) is b) has c) have d) will
7. It .... all day. The streets are muddy.
   a) will rain b) rained c) has been raining d) rains
8. I have been making lunch .... the afternoon.
   a) since b) for c) ever d) on
9. Dad .... in London for two weeks now.
   a) has been b) was c) has been being d) is
10. He .... in the garden. His hands are dirty.
    a) has been working b) worked c) have been working d) is worked
11. I .... my best friend for ten years.
    a) have known b) knows c) have been knowing d) is knowing
12. Mom .... the flat. She's tired now.
    a) will clean b) clean c) has been cleaning d) cleaning
13. I have been at this school .... I was ten years old.
    a) for b) yet c) since d) when

General Questions

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. People .... study animal behavior are ethologists.
   a) where b) who c) which d) when
2. The movie .... I watched was boring.
   a) where b) who c) whom d) which
3. Trees .... grow in jungles are usually very tall.
   a) whom b) what c) which d) who
4. A wild animal is one .... lives in nature and hasn't been tamed by humans.
   a) that b) whom c) who d) where
5. The boy .... won the prize is my cousin.
   a) who b) whom c) whose d) which
6. This is the best film .... I've ever seen.
   a) who b) whom c) whose d) that
7. Whales are animals .... live in large groups.
   a) who b) when c) that d) whose
8. The book .... you gave me was interesting.
   a) whom b) whose c) which d) when
9. My aunt .... lives in London is a doctor.
   a) which b) when c) who d) whose
10. I met the man .... got the gold medal.
    a) whom b) when c) which d) who
11. That is the story .... my brother wrote.
    a) who b) which c) when d) where
12. The girl .... is wearing a blue dress is my sister.
    a) whose b) which c) who d) when
13. I don't like zoos .... don't look after animals.
    a) who b) which c) whom d) this

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The village .... I live is quiet and clean.
   a) when b) where c) who d) that
2. The man .... house is big is my teacher.
   a) who b) which c) whose d) when
3. May is the month .... we take our exams.
   a) where b) when who d) that
4. Sara, ... is my best friend, can swim very well.
   a) when b) who c) whose d) which
5. I'm reading an interesting book .... was written by a scientist.
   a) who b) whose c) when d) that
6. The city .... he was born is on the coast.
   a) which b) where c) when d) that
7. June is the month .... I was born.
   a) when b) which c) who d) where
8. The girl .... hair is long won the prize.
   a) who b) whose c) whom d) when
9. Omar, ... lives in my street, is a doctor.
   a) that b) which c) who d) whose
10. That is the painting .... I like best.
    a) which b) who c) where d) when
11. Cairo, ... is the capital of Egypt, is very big.
    a) where b) which c) who d) whose
12. Ramadan is the month .... we fast.
    a) which b) who c) when d) that
13. The boy .... leg was broken was taken to hospital.
    a) whose b) who c) when d) where

General Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The telephone .... by Graham Bell.
   a) invent b) invented c) was invented d) is invented
2. This nice cake was made .... my sister.
   a) with b) by c) at d) in
3. English .... all over the world.
   a) spoke b) spoken c) is spoken d) speaks
4. .... cars made in Egypt?
   a) Do b) Are c) Is d) Did
5. This picture .... by Mr. Ali.
   a) don't paint b) wasn't painting c) wasn't painted d) painted
6. Lunch .... by my mom.
   a) cook b) is cooked c) has cooked d) is cooking
7. Streets .... every day.
   a) was cleaned b) are cleaning c) are cleaned d) cleaned
8. I .... to hospital yesterday.
   a) take b) will take c) was taken d) took
9. Smartphones .... all over the world.
   a) used b) are using c) are used d) use
10. Cars .... in Japan.
    a) made b) is made c) are made d) make
11. When was the telephone .... ?
    a) invent b) invented c) inventing d) invents
12. .... science taught at your school?
    a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Is
13. Machines are designed .... engineers.
    a) by b) in c) with d) at

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Omar said that the castle .... (is) beautiful.
2. Amani .... (said) me that she loved music.
3. Ali said .... (this) he went to Paris.
4. Mom said she .... (don't) often play tennis.
5. Dad told me that he .... (is washing) the car.
6. Sara .... (said) me that Spain was a beautiful country.
7. Nancy said that .... (her) was flying to Rome.
8. Dad told mom that he .... (will) be late.
9. Sara said she was calling .... (she) mom.
10. They .... (told) father was at work.

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Mona .... (wait) for her parents all day.
2. They .... (study) science for a long time.
3. Mom has been making dinner .... (for) 5 o'clock.
4. Tamer has been cycling since he .... (be) six.
5. Donia .... (be) ill for three days..
6. Dad has been working in this shop .... (since) ten years.
7. I've .... (know) my best friend for five years.
8. Mom has been in hospital .... (for) yesterday.
9. He .... (practice) the piano since 2 o'clock.
10. It .... (rain) all day.

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Do you know the girl .... (which) won the art competition?
2. Plants .... (where) grow in the desert don't need a lot of water.
3. That's the film .... (who) I told you about.
4. The woman .... (which) lives downstairs is a doctor.
5. An ethologist is a person .... (whose) studies animal behavior.
6. The car .... (who) hit me yesterday was running fast.

General Questions

7. Researchers have seen several types of behavior .... (who) elephants share with people.
8. The boy .... (which) lives next door is a talented football player.
9. Whales are huge animals .... (who) live in the sea.
10. Snakes are animals .... (this) have no legs.

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. The town .... (when) I go to school is very old.
2. The man .... (which) works at the train station is my neighbor.
3. That's the woman .... (who) phone was stolen yesterday.
4. July is the month .... (which) the weather is very hot.
5. The story .... (where) Dad gave me was interesting.
6. There are times .... (which) we need to use the internet.
7. Good websites are .... (which) we must look.
8. The school .... (when) we learn is big and clean.
9. Students .... (whose) use technology all the time know a lot of good websites.
10. The book .... (who) my mom chose for me was really interesting.

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. This novel .... (write) by a famous writer last year.
2. Smartphones .... (use) to send messages nowadays.
3. This cheese .... (made) in France.
4. The telegraph .... (invent) in 1830s.
5. Lunch is made .... (with) my mom.
6. Football .... (play) in many countries.
7. Our homework .... (mark) by our teacher last week.
8. The house .... (not paint) by Mr. Green yesterday.
9. Is coffee .... (grow) in warm countries?
10. The radio .... (invent) in 1895.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Sara and Omar are talking about vacations.

Sara : Did you have a good vacation, Omar?

Omar : 1).., we went to Rome.

Sara : 2)..?

Omar : We went there by plane.

Sara : Did you do some sightseeing?

Omar : 3) .... We saw amazing buildings.

Sara : 4)..?

Omar : We stayed in a hotel. It was great.

- Complete the following dialog.

Injy and Nancy are talking about animals.

Injy : What are you doing?

Nancy : I'm reading a book about animals that aren't cute.

Injy : I'm afraid 1)..

Nancy : I mean there are some animals that are ugly.

Injy : 2) ....?

Nancy : We should protect all animals.

Injy : 3)...

Nancy : 4)...?

Injy : They are in danger because of human activity in the sea.

- Complete the following dialog.

Adam wants to help his mom clean his clothes.

Adam : Mom, I'd like to wash my clothes. Can you show me how?

Mom : 1)... First, you need to get your dirty clothes.

Adam : OK. Here they are. 2) ....?

Mom : Next, put the clothes inside the washing machine.

Adam : 3) ....for?

Mom : That's where you put the laundry detergent.

Adam : Is that right?

Mom : 4) .... Finally, press "start" and it will wash your clothes.

Adam : Thanks, mom. That's easy!

- Complete the following dialog.

Samy is helping a tourist to get to the pyramids.

Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions?

Samy : 1)..

Tourist : 2)..?

Samy : The pyramids are in Giza.

Tourist : Are they far from here?

Samy : 3)..

Tourist : How can I go there?

Samy : You can go by taxi.

Tourist : 4)..?

Samy : The Ancient Egyptians built them.

- Complete the following dialog.

Hady and Ali are talking about climate change.

Hady : Good evening, Ali. What are you doing?

Ali : 1)..

Hady : What's this book about?

Ali : 2)..

Hady : 3)..?

Ali : It's a change in weather temperature and rainfall.

Hady : Is it dangerous?

Ali : 4)..

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

1) A tour of Rome
2) Electric scooters
3) Elephant behavior
4) Should we protect animals?
5) Smartphones
6) A visit to the Science Museum

- Write an email to your friend Hani about your trip to Paris.
Your name is Ali, and your email address is ali@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is hani@yahoo.com.

General Questions On The Story

1 Match the words (1–6) to their definitions (a–f).

1) horrible — a) weapon with a long-pointed blade and a handle
2) sword — b) a large quantity that is enough or more than enough
3) enormous — c) to take hold of someone or something suddenly
4) plenty — d) very bad or unpleasant
5) grab — e) to look at for a long time without moving your eyes
6) stare — f) very big in size or amount

2 Fill in with words from the list.

crowned - inn - judge - mirror - release - servant - stocks

1) A ………………… helps to look after a big house and the people who live in.
2) A glass surface that reflects an image is a …………………
3) The ………………… were a wooden frame with holes in it for someone's hands and feet.
4) An ………………… is a place where people can stay and eat meals.
5) A ………………… has the power to decide things in court.
6) If the police let a prisoner go, they ………………… him.
7) A king or queen is ………………… when a crown is put on their head in a special ceremony.

3 Read and match.

a) Lord Hertford — 1) was so tired that he soon fell asleep.
b) Miles — 2) listened to Miles and decided not to punish Edward.
c) The judge — 3) sent a servant to find the seal.
d) Tom — 4) had a fight with his younger brother, Arthur.
e) Edward — 5) wrote the story of The Prince and the Pauper many years later.



4 Correct the mistake in each sentence. One sentence is correct.

1) When Tom has breakfast at the palace, there are three servants there.

....

2) The judge decides to punish Miles and Edward.

....

3) Tom's father was rich.

....

4) The Great Seal is hidden behind the bed in Edward's bedroom.

....

5) The woman wanted to sell the duck at the market.

....

6) In the inn, Tom was very tired and fell asleep.

....

7) During the meal, Miles told Edward about his hobbies.

....

8) Miles left the country and went to France as a sailor.

....

9) Edward promised to speak to Arthur and persuade him to sell the house.

....

10) Tom wanted to see his sisters and play with his friends.

....

5 Read the sentences and circle T (true) or F (false). Correct the false ones.

1. Miles felt it would be easy to get his home back. (T / F)

....

2. Tom wanted to see his sisters and play with his friends. He wanted to go home. (T / F)

....

3. John Canty told Tom he had to go with Hugo to beg for money. (T / F)

....

4. Hugo lay on the ground. He pretended to be very sick and in great pain. (T / F)

....

5. Hugo took the hen and put it into Tom's arms.. (T / F)

....

6. Tom had to listen to Lord Hertford and some important gentlemen talking about things he didn't understand. (T / F)

....

7. Hugo saw a woman with a handbag in her arms. (T / F)

....

8. Hugo pretended to be very sick and in great pain. (T / F)

....

6 Answer the following questions.

1) What did Miles tell Edward about during the meal? ....
2) When did Miles leave the country and go to France as a sailor? ....
3) What did Arthur do after his brother, Miles, left the country? ....
4) What did Edward promise to do to Miles? ....
5) Why wasn't Tom happy in the palace, although he was treated as a king?
6) How did Miles find the real king? ....
7) Why were Miles and Edward taken away to prison? ....
8) What was Edward accused of? ....
9) Did Miles deserve punishment? Why? ....
10) What did the judge decide to do to Edward and Miles at first? ....
11) Where did Miles go when he was released from the stocks? ....
12) When did the woman realize that Edward wasn't a thief? ....
13) What did the judge decide to do after listening to Miles? ....
14) How did Edward prove that he was the real king? ....
15) Was Edward a good king? Why? ....

General Questions

16) Who did Tom miss when he was at the palace?

....

17) What did Hugo pretend to do to get money from the gentleman on the country road? ....

18) Who took Hendon Hall after Miles went to France?

....

19) Why did Edward make Miles one of the king's men?

....

20) What did Edward write to Lord Hertford? ....

7 Answer the following questions. WB

a) What did Miles Hendon do while he was in France?

....

b) How did Hugo trick Edward into leaving the inn with him?

....

c) Why was Tom surprised by the people who worked in Westminster Palace?

....

d) Why was Tom too full to eat much at the evening meal?

....

e) Why did Hugo pretend to be ill? ....

f) Why did Miles and Edward go to prison?

....

g) How did Edward get out of prison?

....

h) What was happening at Westminster Palace when Miles and Edward arrived? ....

i) Who did Miles fight with? ....

j) When did the woman realize that Edward wasn't a thief at the market?

....

8 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. 58

1. Where did Miles and Edward go to rest for the night? ....
   a) Pudding   b) Westminster
   c) an inn   d) the palace
2. Who did Miles have a fight with in the past? ....
   a) Tom Clancy   b) his father
   c) Henry   d) his brother
3. What did Edward use to make Miles, Sir Miles Hendon? ....
   a) a hat   b) a pen
   c) a sword   d) a book
4. Where did Hugo take Edward the next morning? ....
   a) the market   b) his house
   c) Southwark Bridge   d) the palace
5. Who stood behind Tom's chair at the palace? ....
   a) a gentleman   b) two servants
   c) the King   d) Hugo
6. What did Hugo shout when he put a hen in Edward's arms? ....
   a) Help! Help!   b) Run! Run!
   c) Thief! Thief!   d) No! No!
7. Who put Miles in the stocks? ....
   a) a gentleman   b) a soldier
   c) a servant   d) a judge
8. What was Tom getting ready to do at Westminster Palace? ....
   a) sign a letter   b) be crowned king
   c) find Edward   d) meet his father
9. What did Lord Hertford send a servant to find in the palace? ....
   a) Edward's sword   b) a mirror
   c) an important letter   d) the Great Seal

General Questions

9 Circle the correct word. WB

a) Miles Hendon had a fight with his father / brother, who then took his home.
b) While Miles was out, Edward went to Westminster Palace / Southwark Bridge with a boy.
c) When Tom woke up, serv nts / his sisters came into his bedroom.
d) Tom wanted to / didn't want to go home.
e) At Southwark Bridge, Hugo was honest / dishonest about being ill.
f) Miles Hendon saved Edward by taking / paying for the stolen chicken.
g) People threw things at Miles / Edward when he was in the stocks.
h) Edward proved he was king because he knew where the Great Seal / the mirror was.

10 Match the words to the definitions (a–g). WB

rotten - judge - stocks - sword - crowned - inn - servant

a) a place to stay for travelers ....
b) a wooden device to put on prisoners' feet ....
c) make someone a king or queen ....
d) not fresh, old and bad ....
e) a person who works for others ....
f) a long metal weapon ....
g) someone who decides to send people to prison ....

11 Complete the table with information about the characters. WB

became one of the king's men
signed important papers at the palace
was a good soldier and a kind man
wrote Prince and the Pauper
was a good king
was a thief
pretended to be ill
saved a man from the stocks

Edward	Miles Hendon	Hugo	Tom
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....

End of term (2) test



1 Circle the correct words.

a) Is music teaching / taught in your school?

b) We should help people who / whom need help.

c) Riley said that he didn't play / doesn't play basketball.

d) Dad is still at the office. He was working / has been working all weekend.

e) My friend said / told that he would come to my birthday party.

f) Bicycles were making / were made in that building before it closed.

2 Complete the conversations. Use the prompts and the correct form of the verbs.

a) A: How do you download this app?
B: I / show / you.

....

b) A: Where is Brandon going on holiday next week?
B: He said / go / to Italy.

....

c) A: How long has Nancy been learning Spanish?
B: She / learn / Spanish for three years.

....

d) A: What fruit is grown in the UK?
B: Apples / grow / in the UK.

....

e) A: Have you decided what to study at university?
B: Yes, I have. I / study / Biology.

....

f) A: What did Alice say about the castle?
B: She said it / not be / very interesting.

....

3 Read and circle.

I'm reading an interesting book [a] who / which was written by a scientist. It's about people [b] which / who live in unusual places. Did you know, there's less oxygen in high places? I know someone [c] who / which visited a city in the mountains once. He said that when he arrived, it [d] was / is difficult to breathe. He told me that he [e] feels / felt very tired, and he had a headache for a week! People [f] which / who live in high places learn to breathe in a different way.

4 Underline and then correct the mistakes. There are two mistakes in each sentence.

a) I've just download this amazing ap onto my phone.

....

b) Brooke likes to get off the city on his skooter.

....

c) He said that the headfones are on the table.

....

d) If you'll use a digitil camera, you'll take better photographs.

....

5 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

airplane - battery - motorbike - screen - tourists

a) My laptop is really slow. I think it needs a new ....

b) Morgan flew to New York in the biggest .... I've ever seen!

c) Uncle Dylan rides a ....

d) When we went to Barcelona, the city was full of ....

e) The .... on my smartphone is broken.

6 Underline and then correct the mistakes. There are two mistakes in each line.

I think it's very important for people protect the see. [a]........... .... Lots of

beautifully and interesting animal live there. [b]........... ....We can to learn

a lot by studying how they behaviour. [c]........... .... For example, wales

live in big groups and looks after each other. [d]........... .... They seem to

loving each other. They make special noises, to. [e]........... .... There also

might being animals that we have seen never. [f]........... .... Sometimes,

people took too many fish out of sea. [g]........... .... This is a problem for

all the animals that lives there, so we should eat less fishes. [h]........... ....

....

....

....

....

7 Read the text quickly. Choose the best title.

a) Where best to relax

b) Things to see and do

c) A great weekend

Amsterdam is a beautiful city in the Netherlands. It's popular with tourists because of its many canals, and its beautiful, old buildings, art galleries and museums. You can go sightseeing by boat or on foot. If you go to the Rijks museum, you'll see amazing paintings by the artist Rembrandt. If you like Van Gogh's art, then you must visit the Van Gogh Museum. The best time to visit this beautiful city is in spring when it's warm.



Read the text again and choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

a) Amsterdam's beautiful buildings, art galleries and museums

1. make it a popular city for tourists.
2. are all very old.
3. are full of tourists.

b) A great way to see the city is ...

1. on a tour.
2. with friends.
3. by boat or on foot.

c) If you go to the Rijksmuseum, you will see

1. the works of Van Gogh.
2. paintings by Rembrandt.
3. things from the past.

d) A good time to visit the city is

1. when the weather is good.
2. in spring.
3. when the tourists have gone.



Write an informal letter to a relative. Write about a new after-school club you have joined. Remember to start and finish your letter correctly. Write the date and your address. Write about 125 words.

Think about:

- what you do at the club
- the friends you have made
- what you did the last time you went
- how you feel about the club

Exam (1)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My parents went to .... last year.
   a) Paris b) Rome c) London d) Cairo
2. It's a very .... city.
   a) big b) small c) old d) new
3. They visit the .... Colosseum.
   a) English b) French Roman d) Italian
4. My dad said that the Italian .... was the best.
   a) pizza b) ice cream c) fish d) pasta

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My dad's new .... has a big screen.
   a) bike b) desk computer c) headphones d) engine
2. A .... helps people get around places.
   a) doctor b) tour guide c) driver d) tourist
3. The .... was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.
   a) telephone b) smartphone c) laptop d) telegraph

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

going - apps - went - science - boat

"I've got a laptop and a tablet. I download 1).............................. on my smartphone and I use it to look up information online. Last summer, I went camping with my family at the beach. We went on a 2).............................. tour and we swam in the sea every day. I'm 3).............................. to go to university. I think I'll study 4).............................. because I want to help the environment."

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People have been finding new ways to travel since they invented the wheel. Nowadays, electric scooters are almost as popular as bikes, buses, cars, or streetcars for getting around busy streets in towns and cities. Electric scooters don't have engines like cars do.

They have batteries powering an electric motor so they can go much faster than normal scooters. Electric scooters are easy to ride and park. They are good for the planet because they don't make the air dirty. However, some people think that electric scooters can be more dangerous than normal scooters because there are many accidents. Also, they are expensive and are only good for short trips.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Electric scooters are very .... nowadays.
   a) popular b) awful c) private d) bad
2. The opposite of "dangerous" is ....
   a) big b) safe c) small d) common

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the text about? ....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ....
5. How many engines do electric scooters have? ....
6. Do you think electric scooters are good for the planet? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mom said that she .... lunch.
   a) makes b) was making c) is making d) will make
2. Kim has been .... the house.
   a) clean b) cleans c) cleaned d) cleaning
3. My uncle lives in a town .... is very close to the mountains.
   a) who b) which c) when d) where

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. .... (Did) the wheel invented a long time ago?
2. The book .... (who) I'm reading is interesting.
3. He has been ill .... (for) last week.
4. Dad .... (said) me that he was in Cairo.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Sara and Injy are talking about the weekend.

Sara : Hi, Injy. What did you do last weekend?

Injy : Hi, Sara. 1) ....

Sara : To the zoo! Who did you go with?

Injy : 2) ....

Sara : 3) .... ?

Injy : We went by bus.

Sara : 4) .... ?

Injy : Yes, I enjoyed a lot.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Is technology good for us?

....

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "Give me your sword."
2. "Where's Edward, the real king?"
3. "My brother took my home."

a- Miles
b- Edward
c- Tom

B Answer the following questions.

1. What did Miles tell Edward about during the meal?

....

2. Was Edward a good king?

....

3. Where did the Judge put Miles?

....

Exam (2)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. In 100 years, ... will do everything in the home.
   a) Smartphones b) Robots c) Cars d) Tablets
2. They will .... on the microwave.
   a) close b) turn off c) turn on d) clean
3. .... will clean floors and make our beds.
   a) Robots b) Computers c) Smartphones d) Children
4. This will make our lives ....
   a) happier b) easier c) harder d) worse

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Technology helps us .... in touch with our friends and family.
   a) play b) lose c) keep d) save
2. Do you know who .... the wheel?
   a) invented b) discovered c) built d) did
3. "................................" means to make something and change it over time.
   a) Solve b) Notice c) Make d) Develop

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

post - technology - since - popular - for

Today's modern age is the best time when we can make use of modern 1).................... We all enjoy using social media, which is a 2).................... technology for sharing information and photos with friends. But people who 3)......................... on social media must be careful about what they share. Photographs stay on the internet 4)........................ a very long time.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Researchers have seen several <u>types</u> of behavior which elephants share with humans. For example, elephants look after each other when they are ill. Elephants feel sad when other elephants die and sometimes they feel sad for many months.

Elephants will work together as a group to rescue family members that are in danger and they don't get angry with each other as often as other wild animals do. Elephants seem to love each other and look after each other in ways that we have not understood before.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "types" means ....

   a) kinds b) colors c) names d) homes

2. Elephants .... each other when they are ill.

   a) look after b) take after c) give up d) look for

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

   ....

4. What's the main idea of the text?

   ....

5. What do elephants share with humans?

   ....

6. Do you think elephants have feelings? How?

   ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The computer .... by farmers.

   a) use b) uses c) are used d) isn't used

2. Mom said that she .... her tour.

   a) enjoy b) enjoyed c) is enjoying d) will enjoy

3. The restaurant, ... we had dinner, is clean.

   a) which b) when c) who d) where

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Do you remember the time .... (which) we went to the zoo?
2. It .... (rain) all night. The streets are wet.
3. .... (Did) that house built last year?
4. He .... (told) he didn't like visiting museums.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Ali and Karim are talking about a tour to Luxor.

Ali : Where did you go on vacation?

Karim : 1) ....

Ali : How did you go there?

Karim : 2) .... because it's comfortable!

Ali : 3) ....?

Karim : Yes, we went sightseeing and saw many historical places.

Ali : 4) ....?

Karim : We stayed in a hotel. It was great.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Smartphones

....

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "You're one of the king's men!" a- A servant
2. "Would you like to rise up?" b- Edward
3. "What's going on?" c- Miles

B Answer the following questions.

1. Why were Miles and Edward taken to prison?

....

2. How did Edward feel at the inn?

....

3. Was Edward a good king? Why?

....

Exam (3)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Yellowstone is a National ....
   a) Park b) Bank c) Garden d) Museum
2. It's in the ....
   a) UK b) ARE c) USA d) UAE
3. It covers nearly .... square miles.
   a) 1,000 b) 5,000 c) 4,000 d) 500
4. It's one of the .... national parks in the whole country.
   a) smallest b) tallest c) largest d) nicest

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My dad traveled to Paris by ....
   a) bike b) bus c) airplane d) scooter
2. Egypt has got a lot of .... sites.
   a) historical b) history c) society d) farming
3. A / An .... is a person who studies animal behavior.
   a) doctor b) biologist c) ethologist d) artist

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

make - wind - made - pollution - renewable

I think it is true that the natural world will look different, too. I believe that there will be less 1).................. because we will only use 2).................. energy (for example, solar panels and 3).................. farms). However, I think we need to 4).................. these changes soon and I hope that we will look after our planet.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Our planet is in danger because of increasing temperature. This is called global warming. Climate change causes floods, drought and ice melting. **It** affects all living things. We should avoid climate change. Planting trees helps to reduce carbon dioxide.

We should stop pollution by using renewable energy like the sun. On the other hand, recycling rubbish is more necessary. We must stop bad chemicals. We also save water to turn the desert into farms. It's important to save the earth and help the environment to live safely.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) energy b) climate change c) ice d) planet
2. We get renewable energy from the ....
   a) sun b) flood c) drought d) desert

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Give a suitable title to this passage.
....
4. Why do we need to save water?
....
5. Why do you think global warming is dangerous?
....
6. How can we stop pollution?
....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Whales are animals .... live in large groups.
   a) who b) where c) when d) that
2. This table .... of wood.
   a) make b) is made c) made d) makes
3. He has been sleeping .... ten hours now.
   a) for b) since c) when d) to

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Lots of books .... (sell) online.
2. She .... (clean) the house since morning.
3. The school .... (which) I learn is big and clean.
4. I .... (know) my best friend for three years.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Ziad and Hadi are talking about going hiking.

Ziad : Would you like to go hiking tomorrow?

Hadi : No, 1) ....

Ziad : But it's too cold to go swimming.

Hadi : What about watching a movie at the cinema?

Ziad : 2) ....

Hadi : 3) .... ?

Ziad : We could meet at 7:30 p.m.

Hadi : 4) .... ?

Ziad : "Harry Potter" movie.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A visit to a historical site

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "I'll bring your clothes." a- Hugo
2. "Pretend I'm your brother." b- Edward
3. "You're now one of the king's men." c- A servant

B Answer the following questions.

1. What was Edward wearing when he went to London?

....

2. How many servants were there to dress the king?

....

3. Who did Miles have a fight with in the past?

....

Exam (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can see exciting .... at the City Art Show.
   a) photos b) paintings c) flowers d) drawings
2. They are painted by .... young artists.
   a) 20 b) 40 c) 30 d) 50
3. The artists are aged 18 to ....
   a) 25 b) 20 c) 30 d) 35
4. Tickets can be bought ....
   a) offline b) at home c) at the bank d) online

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The water in the lake is .... I can see through it.
   a) clear b) near c) dark d) dirty
2. The train is late. There is a ....
   a) date b) delay c) play d) way
3. .... live in the forest.
   a) Whales b) Ducks c) Monkeys d) Dogs

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

noise - by - per - engineers - in

The bullet train is a special train in Japan that can travel up to 200 miles 1).................... hour. It is a very fast way to travel! But the 2).................... who developed it found that it made a loud 3).................... when it came out of a tunnel. This was a problem, and the engineers found a solution 4).................... nature.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Egypt is a great country in the world. It has a wonderful place in Africa. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. The main language is Arabic. The weather in Egypt is fine all the year. Many tourists come from all over the world to enjoy it. They enjoy <u>its</u> ancient places such as the Egyptian Museum, the Pyramids

They can also visit Luxor and Aswan to see Luxor temples and the High Dam in Aswan. They can also visit Hurghada to enjoy diving and watching the wonderful views under water in the Red Sea. They can buy souvenirs for their friends and relatives. Tourists can have the famous Egyptian delicious food like koshari and falafel.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Tourists visit Hurghada to enjoy ....

a) diving b) flying c) eating d) sleeping

2. Egypt is located in ....

a) Europe b) Africa c) Asia d) America

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How is the Egyptian food? ....

4. Give a suitable title for the passage. ....

5. Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt? ....

6. What does the underlined word "its" refer to? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mona said that she .... her homework.

a) do b) does c) did d) is doing

2. It .... all day.

a) rain b) rains c) has been raining d) rained

3. The boy .... broke the window was punished.

a) who b) which c) whose d) where

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. My car .... (repair) by the mechanic yesterday.
2. She .... (is running) for two hours now.
3. Adam, ... (whose) helped me, is very kind.
4. Dad .... (said) me that he was tired.



7 Complete the following dialog.

Heba and Mona are talking about a story.

Heba : Hi, Mona. What are you doing?

Mona : 1) ....

Heba : 2) .... ?

Mona : It is called "Oliver Twist". Would you like to read it?

Heba : 3) ....

Mona : 4) .... ?

Heba : I like watching English movies.



8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:



Renewable energy



....

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "He's a thief and I'm the king!"
2. "Thief! Thief!"
3. "Give time. I'll think of plan."

a- Hugo
b- Edward
c- Miles

B Answer the following questions.

1. What did the woman want to sell at the market?

....

2. How did Edward prove he was the real king?

....

3. Who wrote the story many years later?

....

Exam (5)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We went to .... this summer.
   a) Paris b) Rome c) London d) New York
2. We went .... and saw some amazing buildings.
   a) swimming b) camping c) sightseeing d) shopping
3. We went on a tour with a ....
   a) teacher b) tour guide c) vet d) tourist
4. He told us all about the .... of the city.
   a) history b) math c) shops d) sports

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When I was in Rome, I bought a jacket as a .... for my dad.
   a) save b) souvenir c) prize d) award
2. At the airport, our .... was late.
   a) trip b) cruise c) flight d) journey
3. .... means to invent and make something new.
   a) Notice b) Cross c) Idea d) Design

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

campsites - hiking - both - also - follow

There are rules about what you can and can't do, for example, where you can go 1)................ and camping in the park. If you want to go camping, you must stay in one of the 2,000 2)........................ . This is not only to keep the plants and animals safe but also because it can be quite dangerous. Visitors must 3)................ these rules to ensure 4)................... their safety and the preservation of the park's natural beauty.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Most people have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals at known times; in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But in fact, most of them don't care about what they should eat for each meal.

Doctors say that healthy food is very important, and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables. People shouldn't eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many sugary drinks. To keep healthy, doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks, do exercise or practice any sport.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "them" refers to ....

   a) doctors b) people c) fruits d) meals

2. .... people care about food.

   a) All b) Many c) Few d) No

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What should people eat and drink to keep healthy? ....
4. How many meals are there in the day? ....
5. What do doctors advise people not to do? ....
6. Why should we do exercise? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... French taught in all schools?

   a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are

2. The house .... I was born is big.

   a) who b) when c) which d) where

3. They have been working .... a long time.

   a) for b) since c) at d) by

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Huda .... (be) ill for three days.
2. I have a drone .... (who) can take photographs.
3. Tamer said that he .... (doesn't) play tennis.
4. Ahmed, ... (who) book was lost, was angry.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Omar and Mazen are talking about the next vacation.

Omar : Where are you going next vacation?

Mazen : 1) ....

Omar : Rome! 2) ....?

Mazen : We're going to travel by airplane.

Omar : 3) ....?

Mazen : We will do some sightseeing.

Omar : Where can you book the tickets?

Mazen : We can book them online.

Omar : Have a nice vacation!

Mazen : 4) ....

8 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Write an informal email to your friend Maged about your vacation. Your name is Basil, and your email address is basil@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is maged@yahoo.com.

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "How did you find me?"
2. "My brother died in the war."
3. "I want to see my sisters."

a- Arthur
b- Edward
c- Tom

B Answer the following questions.

1. What was Edward accused of?

....

2. Who took Hendon Hall after Miles went to France?

....

3. What was Tom getting ready to do at Westminster Palace?

....

Exam (6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Learning .... isn't a good idea.
   a) online b) at school c) offline d) underline
2. Some students don't have .... at home.
   a) cars b) bikes c) computers d) phones
3. Laptops and computers can be .... for some people.
   a) easy b) expensive c) cheap d) simple
4. It's important to see .... in the classroom.
   a) people b) doctors c) boys d) teachers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can .... photos from the internet.
   a) play b) download c) click d) make
2. Will you .... the TV? I want to watch the news.
   a) put on b) turn on c) turn off d) tap
3. We can travel around the city by ....
   a) ship b) boat c) streetcar d) foot

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

tent - said - camel - told - culture

This is one of the most amazing places in Australia! Uluru is a very important part of Australian 1)................ and history. My uncle 2)................ that we should go on a 3)................ trip, and we did that this morning. It was great. We also stayed for a night in a 4)................ in the desert.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are so many historical places in Egypt. Everyone should visit these historical places in Egypt. That helps us to know more about our beautiful country. Last week, I visited the Citadel in Cairo. It's an important monument. It has very tall towers. I saw them from a long way. Salah al-Din built it to protect Cairo. It took eight years to complete.

I visited many museums and mosques there. I hope to visit it again one day. I am also going to visit the Museum of the Islamic Art next week. It's a very important place where you can see a lot of things of the Islamic period. It's open from 9:30 am to 6:30 pm every day except Friday. I hope I will have a good time <u>there</u>.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. You can visit the Museum of the Islamic Art ....

   a) every day   b) on Fridays   c) 12 a.m.   d) six days a week

2. The underlined word "there" refers to ....

   a) the Citadel   b) mosque   c) towers   d) the Museum of the Islamic Art

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the main idea of the passage? ....
4. Where is the Citadel? ....
5. Why should we visit these places? ....
6. Why do you think Salah al-Din built the Citadel? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This machine .... in 1950.

   a) is made   b) was made   c) made   d) makes

2. Canada, ... I went last year, is a beautiful country.

   a) who   b) which   c) when   d) where

3. I .... here for six years.

   a) live   b) has lived   c) have been living   d) lived

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. The man .... (whose) owns this boat must be rich.
2. How .... (many) have you been ill? For three years.
3. Lobna .... (told) that we should go to the zoo.
4. The car .... (who) hit the boy was red.



Complete the following dialog.

Radwa and Sara are talking about their favorite subject.

Radwa : What's your favorite subject at school?

Sara : 1) ....

Radwa : 2) .... ?

Sara : We learn how to write computer code.

Radwa : 3) .... ?

Sara : I like it because it is interesting.

Radwa : What are you going to be when you grow up?

Sara : 4) ....

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Online learning

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "How will we get out of here?" — a- Miles
2. "I will punish you both." — b- Edward
3. "After I left, my brother took my home." — c- The judge

B Answer the following questions.

1. Who stood behind Tom's chair at the palace?

....

2. What did Edward write to Lord Hertford?

....

3. What did the woman want to sell at the market?

....

Exam (7)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Ancient .... can teach us about keeping cool.
   a) people   b) cultures   c) cities   d) pictures
2. The Ancient Egyptians hung wet .... at windows.
   a) cotton   b) poles   c) reeds   d) seeds
3. The .... dried the reeds.
   a) wind   b) sun   c) water   d) sand
4. Thick walls keep out the ....
   a) cold   b) wind   c) heat   d) water

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My laptop is really slow. I think it needs a new ....
   a) camera   b) battery   c) screen   d) board
2. Dad traveled to Paris in a big ....
   a) bus   b) car   c) train   d) airplane
3. When we went to Barcelona, the city was full of ....
   a) water   b) tourists   c) birds   d) tours

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

electric - movie - for - since - dangerous

I've been speaking to different people 1)........................ I started writing this article to find out their opinions. I asked them, 'Are 2)..................... scooters a good idea?'" "Electric scooters are 3)..........................! Last Friday, I was waiting for my friend outside the 4)..................... theater. I was just standing there when a scooter hit me. I didn't hear it until it was too late."

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

If you want to be good at English, the best thing you can do is to build up your own words. First of all, you should read a lot. You should read short stories, comics, newspapers, magazines, etc. As you read, you can guess the meaning of new words.

If you can't, then look them up in a dictionary. Another way is to watch movies in English, keep a vocabulary notebook and write down a few words each day. You should revise them regularly. In my opinion, to speak to people all you need is to use the words you learned. Practice makes perfect.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. You should keep a notebook for new .... to help you to learn new vocabulary.
   a) letter b) words c) passages d) grammar
2. The word "movies" is another word for ....
   a) books b) films c) dictionaries d) stories

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
   ....
4. What can you do if you don't understand a new word?
   ....
5. What is the most important thing when you speak to people?
   ....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
   ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We should help people .... need help.
   a) who b) whose c) whom d) which
2. Rami said he .... play basketball.
   a) don't b) didn't c) isn't d) doesn't
3. Bicycles .... in that factory last year.
   a) make b) are made c) made d) were made

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. How long .... (is) Noura been learning Spanish?
2. My friend .... (told) that he would come to my birthday party.
3. People ...... (whose) live in high places learn to breathe in a different way.
4. My house .... (build) in 2020.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Seif wants to buy a jacket.

Shop assistant : Hello. How can I help you?

Seif : 1) ....

Shop assistant : 2) .... ?

Seif : Medium, please.

Shop assistant : What color would you like?

Seif : 3) ....

Shop assistant : Here you are. 4) .... ?

Seif : Yes, it fits. I'll take it.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Elephant behavior

....

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "Stop! He is a good man."
2. "No, he didn't. I'm your brother."
3. "Pretend I'm your brother."

a- Hugo
b- Edward
c- Miles

B Answer the following questions.

1. What did people do to Miles when he was in the stocks?

....

2. Where did Miles and Edward go after Miles was released from the stocks?

....

3. How was the prison?

....

Exam (8)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lotfia was born in ....
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Luxor d) Paris
2. Her family was ....
   a) poor b) wealthy c) healthy d) happy
3. Her mother was a ....
   a) housewife b) nurse c) housekeeper d) doctor
4. Lotfia was fascinated by ....
   a) swimming b) flying c) traveling d) driving

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We stayed for a night in a .... in the desert.
   a) hotel b) tent c) room d) hospital
2. There are hiking .... for people who like walking.
   a) roads b) pools c) trails d) rails
3. In my ...., smartphones are very important.
   a) opinion b) speech c) book d) fact

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

House - on - with - told - advice

Sydney is an amazing city and you need time to see everything. Friends 1)................ me that the simplest thing to do is to go 2)................ a tour with a tour guide. This was really good 3)................ My favorite building was the Sydney Opera 4)................ You should also visit Bondi Beach. It's near Sydney and it's beautiful.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Ten years ago, Salma who was eight years old then, went into her father's library and asked him if she could borrow some books. Salma's father thought that his daughter was interested in reading. She chose many big books and took them to the garden outside the house and put them under an orange tree.

Salma's father and mother followed her to see what she would do with the books. They were surprised when they saw her standing on the books to pick some oranges.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Salma's parents followed her to the ....

a) library b) garden c) bedroom d) kitchen

2. Salma's parents were .... when they saw her standing on the books.

a) surprised b) happy c) angry d) lazy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How old is Salma?

....

4. Why was Salma's father happy at first?

....

5. Why did Salma need the books?

....

6. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Penguins are birds .... always live near the sea.

a) who b) where c) when d) which

2. My dad has been in hospital .... Friday.

a) for b) since c) on d) in

3. Sara .... won the art competition is my sister.

a) whose b) where c) who d) whom

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Smartphones .... (use) every day.

2. Nancy said that she .... (is doing) her homework.

3. The road .... (close) because of the accident yesterday.

4. I .... (know) my friend Mazen for ten years.



7 Complete the following dialog.

Talia and Mariam are talking about the summer holiday.

Talia : Where did you spend your summer holiday?

Mariam : 1) ....

Talia : 2) .... ?

Mariam : We went to Sharm El Sheikh by plane.

Talia : 3) .... ?

Mariam : We stayed there for a week.

Talia : Did you buy any souvenirs?

Mariam : 4) .... They are fantastic.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Using technology carefully

....

....



9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "Bring the boy here." — a- Lord Hertford
2. "Your Majesty. I'm so pleased to see you." — b- Edward
3. "Bring me my meal." — c- Tom

B Answer the following questions.

1. Who did Miles fight with?

....

2. Why was Edward a good king?

....

3. Where did Miles go as a soldier?

....

Exam (9)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What's the computer language called? ....
   a) code b) rode c) line d) app
2. We write .... for the computer.
   a) words b) phrases c) instructions d) information
3. Computer .... write instructions.
   a) programmers b) teachers c) apps d) screens
4. Computers code makes computers .... properly.
   a) run b) work c) do d) give

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... is a small machine or invention that does something useful.
   a) gadget b) tour c) tablet d) garden
2. Scientists sometimes work in a ....
   a) farm b) bank c) laboratory d) shop
3. In our school, we use computer technology for ....
   a) swimming b) education c) trip d) protection

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

amazing - history - amazed - lasting - Romans

When we go on vacation, we often like to explore the 1)............................ of the places we visit and find out more about them. For many years, the 2)......................... and Greeks lived in Sicily, building cities and structures that can still be visited today. These ancient civilizations left a 3)................. impact on the island, creating 4)..................... architecture like theaters and forts.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mrs Huda was a teacher of English in a preparatory school. She was very kind and helpful, so all students liked her. She used to come to school at 7 o'clock in the morning to give the students more lessons and help them with their homework. She has got a small family. Her husband, Mr Adel is a doctor, her three daughters Mona, Walaa and Safaa.

Walaa would like to be a teacher like her mother. But her elder daughter Mona who likes English and science wants to be a doctor like her father. Safaa, the youngest daughter, wants to be a computer programmer. They are a happy family.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "happy" means ....

   a) pleased   b) young   c) old   d) small

2. Mrs Huda's husband works in a ....

   a) bank   b) hospital   c) school   d) farm

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "Her" refer to?

   ....

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

   ....

5. Why did Mrs Huda come to school at 7 o'clock?

   ....

6. Why do you think all students like Mrs.Huda?

   ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She said .... she loved visiting castles.

   a) to   b) this   c) that   d) at

2. Dina .... the room. It looks tidy and nice.

   a) clean   b) has been cleaning   c) is cleaning   d) cleans

3. The movie .... I watched yesterday was boring.

   a) who   b) which   c) when   d) where

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. .... (Did) homework marked yesterday?
2. Mom said the train .... (is leaving) in ten minutes.
3. .... (Where) have you been learning German?
4. The dog, ... (which) leg was broken, is black.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Asser is meeting a tourist who is visiting Egypt.

Asser : Hello, it's nice to meet you.

Tourist : 1) ....

Asser : 2) .... ?

Tourist : I'm from Spain.

Asser : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : 3) .... I came here last year.

Asser : 4) .... ?

Tourist : I will stay for two weeks.

Asser : Have a nice stay.

Tourist : Thank you.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:



9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "It's behind the mirror in my bedroom."
2. "He's a good man and brave solider."
3. "I'll punish you both."

a- Lord Hertford
b- Edward
c- The judge

B Answer the following questions.

1. Where was the Great Seal?

....

2. What did Hugo shout when he put the hen in Edward's arms?

....

3. Who put Miles in the stocks?

....

Exam (10)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He has been riding a .... for four years.
   a) scooter b) motorbike c) bus d) car
2. Motorbikes are .... for the planet.
   a) good b) bad c) nice d) better
3. They are really ....
   a) noisy b) quiet c) loud d) tall
4. Electric .... are nice and quiet.
   a) cars b) buses c) scooters d) motorbikes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can .... a river cruise.
   a) play b) do c) make d) give
2. A .... is a person who visits a new place.
   a) vet b) scientist c) tourist d) programmer
3. We got .... early from school yesterday.
   a) back b) off c) around d) on

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

old - modern - history - tourists - delicious

Today, tourism is very important to Sicily. Many people visit the island every year to experience its rich 1).................. , pleasant climate, and 2)........................... food. The island's beautiful beaches, historic sites, and interesting culture attract 3)........................... from all over the world, making tourism a key part of Sicily's 4).................... economy.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today. In ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This wasn't just to make them look good.

The paint helped them to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were made of metal and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home? The ancient Egyptians use pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay which came from the River Nile.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "protect" means ....
   a) make b) attack c) help d) keep safe
2. You can look at yourself in the ....
   a) bowls b) mirror c) pots d) clay

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ....
4. Give a suitable title for this passage. ....
5. What do you think of the ancient Egyptians? ....
6. What did the ancient Egyptians use mirrors for? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... English for seven years.
   a) learned b) have been learning c) has learnt d) learn
2. This cake .... by my mom.
   a) makes b) is making c) made d) was made.
3. The doctor .... car is blue is very clever.
   a) who b) whose c) which d) when

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Camels .... (call) the ships of the desert.
2. Sara said she .... (loves) English.
3. I didn't like the story .... (who) you gave me.
4. She has been cooking .... (for) afternoon.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Tamer was absent from school because he was ill.

Ahmed : Hello, Tamer. Why didn't you come to school?

Tamer : 1) ....

Ahmed : 2) ....?

Tamer : I have a backache.

Ahmed : Did you go to the doctor?

Tamer : 3) .... He told me to stay in bed for a week.

Ahmed : I hope you get well soon.

Tamer : 4) ....

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Your favorite sport

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "What's going on?" — a- Miles
2. "I'll speak to your brother." — b- Edward
3. "The palace is beautiful, and so are my clothes." — c- Tom

B Answer the following questions.

1. Who did Tom miss when he was at the palace?

....

2. What did John Canty tell Edward to do with Hugo?

....

3. What color was the hen the woman had?

....

Exam (11)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can find music and videos ....
   a) online b) offline c) at school d) underline
2. We enjoy music on our ....
   a) headphones b) tablets c) smartphones d) screens
3. When you walking and .... at a screen can be dangerous.
   a) looking b) listening c) watching d) using
4. Put your phone .... when you cross the street.
   a) on b) away c) in d) with

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm at the airport waiting for my ....
   a) bus b) train c) flight d) bike
2. Carrier .... were used to send messages.
   a) pigeons b) birds c) ants d) crows
3. The word ".." is opposite to "ugly".
   a) sad b) cute c) glad d) happy

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

climates - on - carry - desert - carried

Camels are often called the "ships of the 1)............................" because they can carry people and heavy goods across large desert areas, such as those in Morocco. They can 2)......................... up to 551 pounds 3)...................... their blacks and can travel up to 25 miles a day, even in very dry and hot 4)......................, because they don't need to drink a lot of water.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A poor farmer had three sons, but the sons didn't want to work on the farm. "Father" sell the land and divide the money among us, they said. "We must go to the town to work there and earn our living. "No" their father said "I shall not sell the land. I will give it all to the son who is the best farmer". Planting trees help to reduce carbon dioxide we should stop pollution

You may have a field. Secretly each son bought books on farming and read them at night and worked hard all day. Each one wanted to produce more crops than his brother.

At the end of the year, the amount of rice growing in each field was double well: "Now you have more money," father said. Buy one more field each from our neighbours. The son who earns the most money from his land can have the whole farm."

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The poor farmer was .... man.

a) wise b) brave c) strong d) wicked

2. Each son worked very hard to be the best ....

a) farmer b) doctor c) teacher d) vet

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the sons ask their father to do? ....
4. Did father agree with his sons' idea? Why? ....
5. How did each son try to grow more than his brothers? ....
6. What's the opposite of the underlined word "sell"? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dad told me that he .... in Cairo.

a) is b) were c) was d) goes

2. I've been learning English .... seven years.

a) to b) since c) by d) for

3. The woman .... lives next door is a teacher.

a) who b) which c) why d) where

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Trees .... (who) grow in jungles are very tall.
2. I .... (read) a story since morning.
3. The telephone .... (invent) by Graham Bell.
4. The boy .... (who) leg was broken went to hospital.

7 Complete the following dialog.

Mona asking Heba about her family and daily routine.

Mona : Hello, Heba. How are you?

Heba : Hi, Mona 1) ....

Mona : 2) ....?

Heba : There are five people in my family.

Mona : 3) ....?

Heba : I get up at 6:30 in the morning.

Mona : Do you like to study?

Heba : 4) .... My favourite subject is English.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Your favorite hobby

....

....

....

9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "How did you find me?" — a- Miles
2. "But the boy is young." — b- Edward
3. Your Majesty. I'm so pleased to see you!" — c- Tom

B Answer the following questions.

1. How was the prison?

....

2. How was Edward at the inn?

....

3. Who put the hen into Edward's arms?

....

Exam (12)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The modern bicycle was invented in ....
   a) 1885   b) 1800   c) 1858   d) 1785
2. It was .... and easy.
   a) big   b) hard   c) cheap   d) fast
3. People used it to travel.. the area.
   a) back   b) around   c) by   d) for
4. It was invented in ....
   a) England   b) Paris   c) Egypt   d) Rome

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mum .... ill for three days.
   a) be   b) is   c) has been   d) was
2. .... are black and white and eat bamboo.
   a) Lions   b) Pandas   c) Tigers   d) Birds
3. We can listen to music with ....
   a) screens   b) a mouse   c) headphones   d) tablets

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

better - some - protect - any - opinion

Humans share the world with many other living things. Is it our job to 1)........................every animal? It seems to me that life is 2)........................ when we help each other. In my 3)................., that includes animals as well as people. Animals are important and useful. They are also special, and 4)................. of them need our help.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Bears are common animals. They are found in North America, South America, Europe, and Asia. Bears can also be found in Alaska and western Canada. They have large bodies with short and strong legs, small rounded ears, much hair, and short tails. While the polar bear is mostly feeding on meat, and the giant panda feeds almost on bamboo, the remaining six species eat any food that they find.

They have an excellent sense of smell. American black bears are the most common. They live near public lands. They are able to run, climb, and swim. Bears usually live in caves. Bears have been hunted for their meat and fur. Six species are endangered. We should give due care to endangered animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "They" refers to ....

   a) black bears b) animals c) bodies d) legs

2. Bears have an excellent sense of ....

   a) taste b) touch c) sight d) smell

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the text about?

....

4. Where are bears found?

....

5. Why are bears hunted?

....

6. Do you think bears will be found in the future?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Talia said she .... swim.

   a) can b) will c) could d) has

2. April is the month .... I was born.

   a) who b) when c) what d) whom

3. My room .... by my sister yesterday.

   a) clean b) cleans c) was cleaned d) is cleaned

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. My brother .... (is) been running.
2. This is the school .... (who) I learn.
3. My uncle, ... (who) car is new, is a doctor.
4. Lunch .... (make) by Mom every day.



Complete the following dialog.

Manar suggests going to the Citadel.

Manar : Hello, Rania. What about going to the Citadel?
Rania : 1) ....
Manar : 2) .... ?
Rania : We can take a taxi.
Manar : 3) ....
Rania : Salah al-Din al-Ayyubi built it.
Manar : Why?
Rania : 4) ....
Manar : Protect Cairo! Is it a historical building?
Rania : Yes, it is.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Your birthday



A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "Bring me my meal." — a- Miles
2. "After I left, my brother took my home." — b- Tom
3. "I want to play with my friends!" — c- Edward

B Answer the following questions.

1. What did Edward use to make Miles Sir Miles?

....

2. Why did Hugo pretend to be ill?

....

3. Who did Miles have fight with?

....

Exam (13)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Science Museum is in ....
   a) London b) Rome c) Cairo d) Paris
2. You can see exciting .... there.
   a) movies b) exhibitions c) stories d) plays
3. The information helps you .... more about nature.
   a) get b) take c) understand d) see
4. You can learn about .... travel in the museum.
   a) air b) sky c) sea d) space

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... energy is better for the environment.
   a) Electric b) Non-renewable c) Renewable d) Petrol
2. He .... his laptop and opened the Internet.
   a) tapped b) turned on c) downloaded d) clicked
3. A .... is an answer to a problem or a question.
   a) research b) drone c) solution d) tablet

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

hole - countryside - out - photograph - into

We went on a beautiful boat trip on a river. We listened to the birds and we looked at the 1)... It was very peaceful. But then, while I was taking a 2)............................. of some birds, I felt some water on my feet. Lots of water was coming 3)........................... our boat, because there was a 4)........................ in the bottom of it, so we had to get out and swim.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Many tourists like to visit Egypt. They usually come to Egypt in winter. They enjoy the fine weather. <u>They</u> visit many places such as the Cairo Tower, the Pyramids and the temples. They enjoy the wonderful weather of Luxor and Aswan in winter. They usually take photos of the <u>ancient</u> temples and they buy many things as souvenirs to remind them of Egypt.

Other tourists like the beautiful beaches, so they like to come in summer. They like to visit Hurghada for its fantastic beaches.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "ancient" means very ....
   a) old   b) now   c) near   d) interesting
2. Tourists go to .... to enjoy the beaches there.
   a) Aswan   b) Luxor   c) Hurghada   d) Cairo

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

4. When do tourists visit Egypt?

....

5. Why do you think they usually go to Luxor and Aswan in winter?

....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. That book .... two years ago.
   a) write   b) is written   c) was written   d) wrote
2. Anas, ... is my best friend, is a doctor.
   a) who   b) whose   c) when   d) where
3. Mom .... me that she went shopping.
   a) said   b) told   c) asked   d) warned

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Many crops .... (grow) in Egypt by farmers.
2. Hamza is the boy .... (which) won the prize.
3. He said he enjoyed .... (he) trip.
4. How .... (often) have you been playing tennis?

7 Complete the following dialog.

Ibrahim and Ahmed are talking about their favourite sports.

Ibrahim : Hello, Ahmed.

Ahmed : 1) ....

Ibrahim : 2) .... ?

Ahmed : My favourite sport is football. What about you?

Ibrahim : 3) ....

Ahmed : Well, chess is a great hobby.

Ibrahim : 4) .... ?

Ahmed : Yes, I won Alexandria chess competition last year.

Ibrahim : When is the next competition?

Ahmed : Next month.



8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A trip to the pyramids



9 The Reader

A Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. "My brother died in the war."
2. "Give me your sword."
3. "Your Majesty: Welcome home."

a- Lord Hertford
b- Edward
c- Arthur

B Answer the following questions.

1. Was Edward a good king? Why?

....

2. How many servants stood behind Tom's chair at breakfast?

....

3. What did people throw at Miles?

....

Listening Texts

General Questions

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

This is one of the most amazing places in Australia! Uluru is a very important part of Australian culture and history. My uncle said that we should go on a camel trip, and we did that this morning. It was great. We also stayed for a night in a tent in the desert.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

"I've been riding a motorbike to work for four years. Then, I read about how bad they are for the planet. Motorbikes are really noisy, too. Now, I really want to sell my motorbike and get a nice, quiet electric scooter instead!"

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Scientists study science and the world around us. They do important projects to learn more about nature ... how it behaves and how it is changing. Around 70% of the whole world is covered in water. We need to study the oceans and seas to learn what is happening with our weather and climate change. But there are areas of the sea which are so deep that it is too difficult or too dangerous for human beings to get there. So, animals are helping us.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I think blended learning is good for everyone. This means you go to school on some days, and learn online on others. You can still talk to your teachers and see your friends. It helps students when they live far away from a school or are disabled, so they can't go to school every day. It is also great for doing homework and makes it more fun.

Omar

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The kingfisher is a bird that can fly very fast, but when it goes into water to catch fish, the water doesn't move very much. The engineers thought this was because of the kingfisher's beak. It is very long and thin, and it goes into the water first.

Exams

Exam (1)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

My parents went on vacation to Rome last year. They said it was a very big city and there were so many things to do there. They said it wasn't possible to see everything in a weekend! They visited the Roman Colosseum and the Pantheon and they also went to a museum. My dad said that Italian ice cream was the best!

Exam (2)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

In 100 years, I think that we will be able to use our smartphones to do everything in the home, from turning on the microwave to closing windows. Robots will do lots of jobs for us, like cleaning floors or making beds. This will make our lives easier.

Exam (3)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Yellowstone is an enormous National Park in the United States of America. It covers parts of the states of Wyoming, Montana, and Idaho. The park's wild countryside covers nearly 5,000 square miles, making it one of the largest national parks in the whole country.

Exam (4)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Come and see new and exciting paintings by 20 young artists aged 18 to 25 at the City Art Show. You can buy tickets at the art show, but if you buy them online, they're half price!

Exam (5)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

This summer my parents and I went to Rome on vacation. It's a wonderful city. We went sightseeing and saw some amazing old buildings. It's a really good idea to go on a tour with a tour guide. They can tell you all about the history. We also visited Positano on the Amalfi Coast.

Exam (6)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I don't think it's a good idea to learn online. Some students don't have computers or laptops at home. For some people, it's too difficult and expensive. I also think it's important to see teachers in the classroom.

Exam (7)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Many ancient cultures can teach us a thing or two about keeping cool without electricity. The Ancient Egyptians, for example, hung wet reeds at windows. The wind dried the reeds, cooling the room. Houses also had thick walls to keep out the heat.

Exam (8)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Lotfia El Nadi was born in Cairo on October 29th, 1907. Her family was wealthy. Her father worked for the government. Her mother was a housewife who wanted her daughter to have a good education. All through her childhood, Lotfia was fascinated by the idea of flying.

Exam (9)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The computer language is called code. People who write instructions for computers are called computer programmers. It's their job to write instructions using code so that computers work properly.

Exam (10)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I've been riding a motorbike to work for four years. Then, I read about how bad they are for the planet. Motorbikes are really noisy, too. Now, I really want to sell my motorbike and get a nice, quiet electric scooter instead!

Exam (11)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Music and videos, which we can find online, are great to enjoy on our smartphones. But when you are walking, wearing headphones and looking at a screen can be dangerous. We need to hear and see things around us. Always take off your headphones and put your phone away when you cross the street.

Exam (12)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The modern bicycle was invented in 1885. It was important because it was a cheap and easy way for people to travel around the area that they lived in. It was invented in England by John Kemp Starley.

Exam (13)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Science Museum in London is a fantastic place to visit. You can see lots of exciting exhibitions about the newest inventions. There is also information that helps you understand more about nature. It's an exciting place to spend a day and to learn about everything from gadgets to space travel.

Model Answers Of Book

Unit (7)

Lessons (1 & 2)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. traffic 2. vacation 3. sightseeing
4. airport 5. luggage 6. souvenirs
7. for 8. castle 9. tourists
10. by 11. souvenir 12. flight
13. historical 14. do 15. happy
16. -ous 17. hotel 18. traffic
19. came 20. did

Practice On Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. told 2. was 3. his
4. leave 5. didn't 6. told
7. was 8. she 9. had
10. admitted 11. had 12. told
13. is 14. boils 15. I

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. didn't 2. told 3. was going
4. wore 5. said 6. had
7. loved 8. my 9. he was
10. is

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Scotland 2. airport
3. flight 4. luggage

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. airport 2. souvenirs 3. traffic

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. Spain 2. crowded 3. Mosaics.
4. Last year. 5. A trip to Spain.
6. Yes, because it is a beautiful country.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. told 2. was 3. admitted

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. loved 2. was flying
3. hurt 4. told

6) Complete the following dialog.

1. I'm fine, thank you. 2. Yes, I did.
3. Where did you go? 4. What did you do there?

7) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Your last vacation

Last summer my parents and I went to Rome on vacation. It's a wonderful city. We went sightseeing and saw some amazing old buildings. We went on a tour with a tour guide. He told us all about the history of the city. We visited Positano. It's a beautiful fishing village with lots of pretty houses. We also visited the Roman Colosseum. We had a fabulous trip in Rome.

Lesson (3)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Australia 2. do 3. trip
4. culture 5. camel 6. clear
7. diving 8. Rome 9. scenery
10. trails 11. tour guide 12. opaque
13. environment 14. go

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Rome 2. amazing
3. tour guide 4. village

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. on 2. reviews 3. tent

3) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. amazing 2. told
3. tour 4. Opera

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. told 2. to stay 3. went

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. I don't think this movie is very good.
2. I'm not sure.
3. Uluru is one of the most amazing places in Australia.

6) Complete the following dialog.

1. Yes, I am. 2. I'm not sure.
3. Let's watch a movie. 4. Good idea.

7) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A review about a famous place

Kakadu National Park is one of the largest national parks in Australia. It has amazing things to see and do. It has rock art and incredible

waterfalls. You can do a river cruise and go to Cahill's crossing to see crocodiles! The park has wonderful scenery and many ecosystems all in one place. If you like hiking, there are miles of trails to explore. There is something for everyone at Kakadu!

Lessons (4 & 5)

Practice On Vocabulary

1. history 2. lasting 3. architecture
4. Tourism 5. techniques 6. Cozy
7. fantastic 8. Dutch 9. public
10. ski 11. search 12. South Africa
13. to get 14. only 15. cable car

General Exercises

1) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.
1. enormous 2. nature
3. mountains 4. to

2) Read the following text and answer the questions.
1. dad 2. fantastic 3. A wonderful trip.
4. Because they don't cost a fortune.
5. Because it stopped running in 2009.
6. Yes, because it was a fabulous trip.

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
1. impact 2. century 3. follow

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
4. said 5. cozy 6. catch

5) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

The Citadel

The Citadel of Cairo is a historic fortress in Cairo. It's also known as the Saladin Citadel. It was built by Salah ad-Din (Saladin) in the 12th century. It served as a defense against Crusaders. The Citadel offers panoramic views of Cairo and has many important structures, including the Mosque of Mohammed Ali and the Gawhara Palace. Visitors can explore its museums. The Citadel is a UNESCO World Heritage site. It's worth visiting.

Test Based On Unit (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
1. South Africa 2. tourists
3. Table 4. cable car

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
1. sightseeing 2. diving 3. do

3) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.
1. trains 2. served
3. original 4. routes

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.
1. effect 2. explore
3. We like to explore the history of the places we visit.
4. The history of Sicily.
5. The Romans and Greeks.
6. To experience its rich history, pleasant climate and delicious food.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
4. said 5. was watching 6. to go

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.
1. visit 2. said
3. was 4. was washing

7) Complete the following dialog.
1. I went to Rome. 2. Who did you go with?
3. Yes, we did.
4. Did you bring back any souvenirs?

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A review of a city you visited

Last summer my parents and I went to Rome on vacation. It's a wonderful city. We went sightseeing and saw some amazing old buildings. We went on a tour with a tour guide. He told us all about the history of the city. We visited Positano. It's a beautiful fishing village with lots of pretty houses. We also visited the Roman Colosseum. We had a fabulous trip in Rome.

9) The Reader:
A) 1. Edward 2. Miles 3. Servant
B) 1. He will speak to his brother and make him give back Miles's home.
2. He felt sad.
3. Because he was so tired.

Unit (8)

Lessons (1 & 2)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
1. bus 2. airplane 3. Electric

4. streetcars 5. engines 6. riding
7. noisy 8. for 9. accident
10. on 11. easy 12. dirty
13. delay 14. announcement
15. other 16. Passengers 17. accident
18. making 19. platform 20. batteries

Practice On Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. have been living 2. has been
3. been learning 4. have been planting
5. has been 6. long
7. since 8. for
9. was 10. has been raining
11. has been 12. since
13. been playing 14. since 15. for

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. been planting 2. been going
3. has been cleaning 4. has
5. been living 6. have been learning
7. has been working 8. since
9. been 10. have known

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. pop 2. helicopter
3. short 4. excited

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. airplane 2. travelling
3. streetcar 4. scooter

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. on foot 2. easy
3. announcement 4. has been working
5. How long 6. has been

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. special 2. popular
3. electric scooters 4. Electric scooters.
5. They have no engines.
6. I think they are good and useful.

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. for 2. have been playing
3. been 4. since

6) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Electric Scooters

Electric scooters are very popular nowadays. They don't have engines like cars do. They have batteries powering an electric motor so they can go much faster than normal scooters. Electric scooters are easy to ride and park. They're good for the planet because they don't make the air dirty. However, some people think that electric scooters can be more dangerous than normal scooters because there are many accidents. Also, they are expensive and are only good for short trips.

Lesson (3)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. bus 2. leaves 3. get on
4. much 5. include 6. get around
7. off 8. tour guide 9. off
10. off 11. book 12. stayed
13. back 14. helicopter 15. per
16. restaurant 17. awesome 18. do
19. booked 20. cost

General Exercises

1) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. capital 2. book 3. get on 4. tours

2) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. ugly 2. 25% 3. six
4. Helicopter tours of Hong Kong.
5. 263 islands.
6. From the Royal Star Hotel.

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. going 2. been cleaning
3. How long 4. since

4) Complete the following dialog.

1. I'm going on vacation.
2. Where do you want to go?
3. What are you doing? 4. Thank you.

5) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A tour of a famous city

I visited Tokyo last year. It is a beautiful city. There was so much to see and do. There werea lot of tours to get around the city. We went on a bus tour to popular places where all tourists go. Bike tours are also a better way to get around because the guides show you all the real city. We went sightseeing. It was a wonderful trip. We had a fun time there.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Practice On Vocabulary

1. pilot 2. rich 3. fascinated
4. keep 5. Camels 6. transportation
7. take care 8. for 9. alone
10. goods 11. mountainsides
12. for 13. pounds 14. climates 15. light

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. ships 2. goods
3. miles 4. drink

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. wealthy 2. government
3. fascinated 4. first

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. normal 2. hard
3. They can live high up the mountains.
4. They make it easy to walk and climb in the mountains.
5. Between 70 to 100 pounds.
6. Because people there have no roads.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. get 2. taken 3. rely on
4. for 5. have been walking 6. for

5) Write an informal letter.

20 Orabi Street,
Cairo
March 15th, 2025

Hi Omar,
Hope you're fine! We're having a great time on vacation. We're at the beach. It's amazing here. We arrived two days ago. We're staying in a hotel. The trip was really great. Yesterday was really exciting! It was a beautiful day, and we did many exciting things.
We went on a boat trip in the sea. I swam and played with my brothers. I'm enjoying it very much.
CU!
Love,
Ahmed

Test Based On Unit (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. 263 2. beaches
3. helicopter 4. greenest

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. on foot 2. engines 3. tour

3) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. since 2. by
3. housewife 4. making

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. hard
2. peaceful
3. They went on a boat trip on a river.
4. My vacation.
5. There was a hole in the bottom of it.
6. Yes, because at last he was happy.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. been living 2. since 3. have been learning

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. have been working 2. have been reading
3. all 4. has been raining

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. It was great. 2. Where did you go?
3. Yes, I did. 4. How long did you stay there?

8) Write an informal letter.

30 Zahi St.,
Giza
5th March

Dear Ziad,
Hope you're well! I'm having a great time.
I'm having a birthday party next Friday. I'll be 13 years old. I'll be happy if you come. I'm going to invite all my friends and family. It'll be at my house.
I'm looking forward to seeing you.
CU!
Love,
Hadi

9) The Reader:

A) 1. Edward 2. the servant 3. Hugo

B) 1. Three servants.
2. Because he was still full.
3. In the stocks.

Model Answers

Unit (9)

Lessons (1 & 2)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. ethologist 2. share 3. trained
4. purr 5. wild 6. surprising
7. jungles 8. large 9. panda
10. penguin 11. cut down 12. tame
13. gets 14. pets 15. tamed
16. rescuers 17. Behavior 18. India 19. short

Practice On Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. who 2. which 3. who
4. that 5. which 6. that
7. that 8. which 9. who
10. that 11. which 12. that
13. who 14. which 15. who
16. who 17. that

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. which / that 2. who 3. which
4. who 5. which 6. who
7. who 8. that / which 9. which
10. who

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. penguin 2. short 3. swim 4. climate change

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. Researchers 2. behavior
3. after 4. rescue

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. scientists 2. noisy 3. three
4. Snakes. 5. In a small town.
6. I think they're dangerous, but amazing.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. jungles 2. domestic 3. get
4. which 5. who 6. that

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. who 2. which
3. who 4. who

6) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Tigers

Tigers are amazing animals. They are the largest of the cat family. They have orange fur with black stripes. They live in forests, grasslands, and mountains. They are powerful hunters. They hunt animals such as deer and zebras. They are more active at night than during the day. Tigers can swim very well. They can use their ears to communicate with their cubs. Tigers are endangered animals. I think we must protect them.

Lesson (3)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Scientists 2. collect 3. deep
4. dangerous 5. covered 6. essential
7. behave 8. scientists 9. machine
10. behavior 11. pigeons 12. a few
13. danger 14. afraid 15. had
16. shallow 17. contact 18. too

General Exercises

1) Complete the following dialog

1. I'm reading an article.
2. What is the article about?
3. That's right.
4. Can I read it?

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. researchers 2. machine
3. wildlife 4. too

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. big seas 2. adjective
3. By doing a lot of projects
4. It's covered in water.
5. Yes, I think so.
6. Sea lions and seals.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. climate change 2. covered
3. behavior 4. in danger 5. happy
6. that 7. which 8. who

5) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Animal helpers

Scientists use some animals to help in collecting information. There are some areas of the sea that are so deep that it is difficult or too dangerous for human beings to get there. So, animals help us. Scientists are using sea lions and

seals as researchers. The animals wear a small machine which shows how much salt is in the water and sends this information back to scientists. They are also using dolphins. The dolphins wear a small machine with a camera that helps them find dangerous objects that can hurt humans and wildlife.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Practice On Vocabulary

1. cave 2. patterns 3. tiny
4. skilled 5. cut down 6. respect
7. scare 8. ugly 9. Humans
10. sculpture 11. modern 12. share
13. serious 14. respect 15. exist
16. safe 17. -ful 18. many
19. opinion

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. model 2. stone
3. three 4. message

2) Complete the following dialog.

1. Yes, of course. 2. The Koala.
3. Where do Koalas live?
4. How many koalas are there now?

3) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. condor 2. colors
3. mountains 4. protect

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. very small 2. paintbrushes 3. In caves.
4. Cave painting. 5. Over 70.000 years old.
6. They drew patterns of circles and squares.

5) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Should we protect animals that are in danger?

Humans share the world with many other living things. It seems to me that life is better if we help each other. In my opinion, animals are important and useful. They are also special, and some of them need our help. However, life can be difficult for many people. For example, we all have to go to school or work. So we can't look after all animals. Finally, I think we should try to save the animals that are in danger.

Test Based On Unit (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. last 2. pop
3. midnight 4. bands

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. trained 2. Whales 3. deep

3) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. stone 2. gold
3. rhinos 4. danger

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. wild 2. purr 3. Pets and domestic
4. He studies animal behavior.
5. Animal behavior.
6. It's one that lives in nature and hasn't been tamed by humans.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. which 2. who 3. that

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. who 2. which 3. who 4. which

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. I visited the Science Museum.
2. Who did you go with?
3. What did you see there?
4. Yes, I did.

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Dolphins

Dolphins are amazing animals. They are very clever and friendly. They live in the sea and ocean. They live in groups. They communicate with each other using a variety of sounds, such as clicks and whistles.
Scientists are using dolphins as researchers. There are some areas of the sea that are so deep that we can't get there. The dolphins can swim to places that are too difficult or dangerous for divers. The dolphins wear a small machine with a camera that helps them find dangerous objects in the sea. I think the dolphins are amazing animals.

9) The Reader:

A) 1. Hugo 2. Edward 3. Tom

B) 1. He took Miles's home, Hendon Hall.
2. It was a horrible place.
3. A big, brown hen.

Model Answers

Review Based On Units (7 - 8 - 9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (v)

1. traffic 2. flight 3. appointment
4. souvenirs 5. medicine 6. streetcar
7. artist 8. on foot 9. actor
10. animals 11. different 12. helicopter

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (G)

1. was 2. told 3. didn't
4. has been waiting 5. been playing
6. has been sitting 7. since
8. have been 9. for 10. who
11. which 12. which 13. who
14. for 15. was cleaning

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. told 2. cooked
3. has been playing 4. since
5. long 6. who 7. who
8. which 9. called 10. for
11. been learning 12. which
13. her 14. which 15. who

Unit (10)

Lessons (1 & 2)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. headphones 2. devices 3. screen
4. website 5. screen 6. connect
7. away 8. app 9. social
10. with 11. trust 12. exciting
13. address 14. power 15. screen
16. modern 17. communicate
18. was 19. eye-contact 20. use

Practice On Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. where 2. who 3. which
4. who 5. when 6. where
7. which 8. whose 9. when
10. whose 11. where 12. which
13. whose 14. where 15. when

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. which 2. who 3. where
4. whose 5. when 6. which / that
7. whose 8. which / that 9. where 10. which

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. internet 2. correct
3. website 4. parents

2) Complete the following dialog.

1. I'm listening to music.
2. What's wrong with it?
3. Does it have any power?
4. Thanks for your help.

3) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. smartphones 2. screen
3. around 4. cross

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. rules 2. get 3. post
4. check 5. devices 6. headphones
7. app 8. which 9. who
10. where 11. whose 12. who
13. when 14. which

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. where 2. who 3. which
4. when 5. whose

6) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Using technology

Technology can be exciting and fun, but we must remember to use it carefully. Today's modern age is the best time when we can make use of modern technology. We all enjoy using social media which is a popular technology for sharing information and photos with friends. But people who post on social media must be careful about what they share. Photographs stay on the internet for a very long time. In the future, when you want to get into university or get a job, other people can look at your social media to learn about you. What do you want them to see?

Lesson (3)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. devices 2. energy 3. renewable
4. make 5. inventing 6. charge
7. rush hour 8. bad 9. turn into
10. click 11. floor 12. solar

13. farms 14. contact 15. off
16. do 17. into 18. clean
19. -able

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. energy 2. principal
3. electricity 4. renewable

2) Complete the following dialog.

1. Of course. 2. What do I do next?
3. How can I choose a photograph?
4. Click on.

3) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. energy 2. together
3. farm 4. electricity

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. turned 2. washing 3. turn on
4. whose 5. which 6. when

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. device 2. batteries
3. They can make energy.
4. Wind, water and the sun.
5. Human energy.
6. It makes electricity for a 30 minute phone call.

6) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Renewable energy

Renewable energy is energy that comes from nature and never runs out. It is clean and good for the Earth. Some examples of renewable energy are sunlight, wind, water, and heat from the ground. Solar energy uses the sun to make electricity, and wind energy uses wind to turn big turbines. Water can also make power in dams. These types of energy do not pollute the air like burning coal or oil does. Renewable energy helps us protect the planet and save natural resources. It also gives us energy that we can use forever. Using more renewable energy is a smart way to keep the Earth safe and clean for everyone!

Lessons (4 & 5)

Practice On Vocabulary

1. give 2. code 3. Python
4. programmer 5. learning 6. either
7. person 8. App 9. blended
10. education 11. do 12. interested
13. technology 14. opinion 15. meeting
16. away 17. disabled 18. brush
19. after 20. obvious 21. -tion

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. computer studies 2. code
3. story 4. apps

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. technology 2. classes
3. at 4. education

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. famous 2. mark 3. Yes, it can.
4. Online learning. 5. Teachers.
6. I think going to school is more interesting.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. grade 2. code 3. education
4. which 5. who 6. where

5) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Are you for or against blended learning?

I think blended learning is good for everyone. This means you go to school some days and learn at home on others. You can still talk to your teachers and see your friends. It helps students who can't go to school every day. It is also great for doing homework and makes it more fun.

Test Based On Unit (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. England 2. quickly
3. floor 4. 850

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. drones 2. headphones 3. click

3) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. principal 2. panels
3. electricity 4. renewable

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. online learning 2. teacher
3. Because he lives 200 miles from the nearest school.
4. He helps his parents on the farm.
5. Once a week. 6. No, he doesn't.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. which 2. when 3. whose

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. who 2. which
3. whose 4. where

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. It is a new laptop. 2. How did you get it?
3. Yes, I do. 4. What do you use it for?

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Technology

Technology can be fun and exciting. Our world is different today because of technology. It's true that life is easier at home, at work and at school. Technology does difficult jobs. However, technology can be bad for the environment. People spend more time on their smartphones and they sometimes don't speak to their friends or do exercise. In conclusion, I want to finish by saying that I think technology will make the world a better place. In my opinion, we should be careful about how children use technology.

9) The Reader:

A) 1. Lord Hertford 2. The judge 3. Tom
B) 1. He was accused of stealing the hen.
2. Yes, because he knew how poor people lived. 3. The judge.

Unit (11)

Lessons (1 & 2)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. fridge 2. drone 3. invent
4. mailed 5. keep 6. send
7. communicate 8.make 9. invented
10. solution 11. telegraph 12. delivered
13. gadget 14. Engines 15. doing
16. play 17. Digital cameras
18. telephone 19. receive 20. -ful

Practice On Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. are sent 2. were carried 3. invented
4. are delivered 5. are used 6. Is
7. are grown 8. are sold 9. isn't spoken
10. was designed 11. were
12. Was 13. was invented
14. aren't grown 15. was written

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. was invented 2. was sent
3. were made 4. were delivered
5. are used 6. are made
7. are sold 8. is spoken 9. was invented
10. Was 11. used 12. was made
13. clean 14. isn't played 15. by

3) Rewrite the sentences in the passive.

1. The smartwatch was invented about 30 years ago.
2. Now, smartwatches are worn by lots of people.
3. Oranges are grown in Egypt by farmers.
4. My homework wasn't done yesterday.
5. Where was this car made?

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. car 2. horses
3. transportation 4. engines

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. problem 2. solution
3. invention 4. research

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. solution 2. drone 3. in touch
4. is played 5. Is 6. by

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. mail 2. 1830s
3. Ways of communication.
4. Alexandria Graham Bell
5. We could speak to people all over the world.
6. No, I don't think so, because parcels are still delivered to our homes by mail.

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. are sold 2. grown
3. was written 4. was the wheel invented

6) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

An invention

The car is a very important invention because it changed how we travel. Before it was invented, people traveled on foot or on horses. Lots of trips were made by bicycle, too. These were all good types of transportation, but it was difficult to travel a long way. The car made it easier to go on long trips. Today, cars are used by people all over the world. It's hard to think of our lives without them.

But cars have changed a lot over time. In the past, engines were invented so that cars could move. But lots of modern cars that are sold today have electric batteries.

Lesson (3)

Practice On Vocabulary

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. laboratory 2. do 3. ideas
4. keep 5. outside 6. Design
7. sonar machine 8. feet
9. solve 10. per 11. beak
12. similar 13. designed 14. solution
15. keep 16. give 17. for
18. catch 19. firstly 20. -y

General Exercises

1) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. catch 2. beak
3. thin 4. bullet

2) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. fantastic 2. nature inventions
3. In laboratories.
4. To keep things together.
5. From nature. 6. From a plant.

3) Complete the following dialog.

1. I think it is the smartphone.
2. What do you do on your smartphone?
3. I agree with you. 4. You're welcome

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. laboratory 2. flippers 3. bullet
4. beak 5. for 6. noises

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Thank you for your questions
2. Can you give us more details?
3. That's an interesting question.

6) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Smartphones (for or against)

Smartphones are amazing devices. They let us call, text, and connect with others easily. We can use them to learn, play games, and watch videos. They make life more fun and easier. However, some people say smartphones can be bad. Spending too much time on them may harm our eyes or distract us from work or studies. They can also stop us from talking to people face to face. In conclusion, smartphones are very useful, but we should use them wisely. Balancing our time is the key to enjoying their benefits.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Practice On Vocabulary

1. way 2. Papyrus 3. Rope
4. Scroll 5. invented 6. mixed
7. black and white 8. paper-free
9. exhibitions 10. telescope 11. curious
12. aqueduct 13. Cloth 14. clay
15. electronic 16. going 17. store
18. thin 19. valuable 20. -ive

General Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. London 2. fantastic
3. exhibition 4. information

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. by 2. invention
3. take 4. paper

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. electronic 2. Wind catchers
3. interactive 4. was mixed
5. was stored 6. were taken

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. Madrid 2. modern
3. The National Museum of Natural Sciences.
4. It was created to tell people about the natural world in Spain and around the world.
5. Around eight million.
6. These things help scientists to understand how our world changes.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. What did the invention of paper change?
2. You can learn about nature in museums.

4) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

The Science Museum

The Science Museum in London is a fantastic place to visit. You can see lots of exciting exhibitions about the newest inventions. There is also information that helps you understand more about nature. It's an exciting place to spend a day and to learn about everything from gadgets

to space travel. You can also take part in interactive exhibitions, where you can touch and move different things to find out how things work.

Test Based On Unit (11)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. 1830s 2. solution
3. telephone 4. messages

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. fridge 2. laboratory 3. solution

3) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. Japan 2. engineers
3. noise 4. solution

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. kind 2. skin
3. The invention of paper
4. It's a thick water plant.
5. To make an early type of paper.
6. The Chinese.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. are made 2. was written 3. by

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. are delivered 2. were invented
3. Was / built 4. by

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. It is the computer.
2. When was it invented?
3. Yes, we do.
4. Can you help me to use it?

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Inventions of communication

The telegraph was invented in the 1830s, as a solution to the problem of how long letters took to arrive. It used a special machine to send messages to another telegraph station quickly. And, of course, when the telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876, we could speak to people all over the world. Now that we use emails and messages to communicate, some people think we don't need the mail anymore. But because many of us buy things online, the post is still important as parcels are delivered to our homes. Some parcels are even delivered by drones now.

9) The Reader:

A) 1. Edward 2. Tom 3. The judge

B) 1. At Westminster Palace
2. He said Miles was a good man and a brave solider.
3. Tom.

The Story

Activities On Chapter (4)

1) Read the sentences and circle (T) True or (F) False and correct the false ones.

1. F Correction: palace: inn 2. T
3. F Correction: sister: brother
4. F Correction: easy: difficult
5. F Correction: hobbies: life
6. T 7. T 8. T
9. F Correction: England: France 10. T

2) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

a) 1. Edward 2. Miles 3. Tom
b) 1. Tom 2. A servant 3. Miles
c) 1. Edward 2. Tom 3. Miles

3) Answer the following questions.

1. He was very tired.
2. Miles told him about his life.
3. His younger brother, Arthur.
4. Three servants.
5. To speak to Arthur and make him give back the home to Miles.
6. He felt sad.
7. To Southwark Bridge.
8. He had to sign a lot of papers.
9. He wanted to see his sisters and play with his friends.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. An inn 2. France 3. difficult
4. His brother 5. sword 6. Bridge
7. enormous 8. sisters and mother

Activities On Chapter (5)

1) Read the sentences and circle (T) True or (F) False and correct the false ones.

1. F Correction: Miles: John Canty
2. T 3. F Correction: duck: hen
4. F Correction: Miles: Hugo
5. T 6. T
7. F Correction: recognize: didn't recognize

8. F Correction: Paris: London
9. F Correction: black: brown
10. F Correction: Italy: France

2) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

a) 1. Miles 2. The judge 3. Edward
b) 1. The Gentleman 2. Arthur 3. Edward
c) 1. Edward 2. Miles 3. Hugo

3) Answer the following questions.

1. At Southwark Bridge.
2. He pretended to be very ill and in great pain.
3. At the market.
4. He shouted, "Thief! Thief!"
5. The judge.
6. He said his brother died in the war in France.
7. They threw rotten eggs and fruit at him.
8. They went to London.
9. To Lord Hertford.
10. It was a horrible place,

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. Hugo 2. ran off 3. hen
4. Miles 5. stocks 6. eggs
7. London

Activities On Chapter (6)

1) Read the sentences and circle (T) True or (F) False and correct the false ones.

1. F Correction: bed: mirror
2. F Correction: Southwark : Westminster
3. T 4. T
5. F Correction: Miles: Tom
6. F Correction: Tom: Edward
7. T
8. F. Correction: didn't stay: stayed
9. T 10. F Correction: Edward: Tom

2) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

a) 1. Lord Hertford 2. Edward 3. The servant
b) 1. Tom 2. Edward 3. Lord Hertford
c) 1. Lord Hertford 2. servant 3. Edward

3) Answer the following questions.

1. Tom was getting ready to be king.
2. To Lord Hertford.
3. To find the Great Seal.
4. Yes, because he knew how poor people lived.
5. He knew where the Great Seal was.
6. They stayed friends.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tom 2. solider 3. Abbey
4. Edward 5. mirror 6. Edward
7. Tom 8. Great Seal

Review Based On Units (10 & 11)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. desk computer 2. chess
3. mouse 4. table tennis
5. headphones 6. invention
7. digital camera 8. Fridges
9. battery 10. airplane
11. screen 12. telephone
13. Design 14. code

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. which 2. who 3. where
4. when 5. who 6. which
7. was written 8. taught 9. who
10. were made 11. is played 12. who

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. was written 2. are used
3. were taken 4. is protected
5. is grown 6. are delivered
7. was invented

Model Answers Of Final Revision

General Exercises on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. flight 2. traffic 3. souvenir
4. camel 5. tent 6. tour guide
7. clear 8. cozy 9. sightseeing
10. sites 11. cruise 12. century

Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. was 2. said 3. didn't
4. his 5. should 6. suggested
7. admitted 8. was 9. that
10. told 11. was 12. told

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. didn't 2. told 3. could
4. loved 5. is

General Exercises on Unit (8)

Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. on foot 2. airplane 3. Electric
4. streetcar 5. around 6. on
7. delay 8. tourist 9. book
10. do 11. leaves 12. bus

Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. been planting 2. have been living
3. have been 4. have been studying
5. has 6. since 7. long
8. been 9. was born 10. since
11. for 12. has been

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. been going 2. have been reading
3. has been cleaning 4. has been raining
5. How long

General Exercises on Unit (9)

Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. ethologist 2. domestic 3. behave
4. purr 5. pigeons 6. Pandas
7. rescue 8. researchers 9. afraid
10. pharmacist 11. cute 12. opinion

Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. that 2. which 3. who
4. who 5. which 6. that
7. which 8. that 9. who
10. which 11. that 12. that

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. who 2. which / that 3. which / that
4. who 5. who

General Exercises on Unit (10)

Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. app 2. headphones 3. website
4. screen 5. social media 6. sharing
7. energy 8. Renewable 9. farm
10. turned on 11. battery 12. education

Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. which 2. where 3. who
4. when 5. whose 6. who
7. where 8. when 9. who
10. where 11. which 12. whose

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. who 2. where 3. who
4. who 5. which

General Exercises on Unit (11)

Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. problem 2. solution 3. camera
4. invent 5. fridge 6. invented
7. receive 8. laboratory 9. beak
10. finally 11. Papyrus 12. Cloth

Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. was written 2. was sent 3. are delivered

4. Were | 5. are sold | 6. was invented
7. was built | 8. weren't delivered | 9. are used
10. is grown | 11. taught | 12. by

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. was written 2. by 3. are worn
4. are made 5. was cleaned

General Questions

1- Listening

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Australia 2. culture
3. camel 4. tent

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. motorbike 2. bad
3. noisy 4. scooter

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. science 2. projects
3. 70% 4. deep

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. blended 2. online
3. teachers 4. far away

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. kingfisher 2. catch
3. beak 4. move

2- Choose

Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. diving 2. flight 3. sightseeing
4. Tourism 5. Cozy 6. vacation
7. souvenirs 8. on 9. tent
10. capital 11. century 12. catch
13. cable car

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. streetcar 2. scooters 3. back
4. tour guide 5. book 6. Passengers
7. make 8. noisy 9. platform
10. per 11. around 12. -ful
13. fascinated

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. behavior 2. essential 3. pigeons
4. scientists 5. Patterns 6. desert
7. ethologist 8. wild 9. cut down
10. a few 11. danger 12. contact
13. tiny

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. devices 2. websites 3. renewable
4. charge 5. downloaded 6. screen
7. away 8. website 9. follow
10. wear 11. turn on 12. tap
13. floor

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. drone 2. invent 3. solutions
4. aqueduct 5. for 6. touch
7. send 8. gadget 9. nature
10. laboratory 11. engine 12. digital
13. free

3- Read and complete

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. flight 2. hotel
3. bus 4. souvenir

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. motorbikes 2. stations
3. bikes 4. excited

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. behavior 2. domestic
3. around 4. purr

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. information 2. websites
3. at 4. who

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. problem 2. away
3. solution 4. invent

4- Comprehension

- Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. Spain 2. crowded
B) 3. They spent a day.
4. It's famous for its shops.
5. A trip to Spain. 6. Maya.

- Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. electricity 2. non-renewable
B) 3. I think it is good.
4. The second part of the machine.

5. Two parts
6. Yes, because it is renewable and clean and it doesn't hurt any sea animals.

- Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. two 2. kim

B) 3. She's friendly and kind.
4. An engineer.
5. On foot.
6. She goes skateboarding.

5- Choose

Grammar

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. loved 2. told 3. to go
4. his 5. goes 6. didn't
7. told 8. was 9. she
10. told 11. was 12. had
13. is

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. have been living 2. has been working
3. long 4. since
5. have been waiting 6. has
7. has been raining 8. since
9. has been 10. has been working
11. have known 12. has been cleaning
13. since

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. who 2. which 3. which
4. that 5. who 6. that
7. that 8. which 9. who
10. who 11. which 12. who
13. which

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. where 2. whose 3. when
4. who 5. that 6. where
7. when 8. whose 9. who
10. which 11. which 12. when
13. whose

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. was invented 2. by 3. is spoken
4. Are 5. wasn't painted
6. is cooked 7. are cleaned 8. was taken
9. are used 10. are made 11. invented
12. is 13. by

6- Correct the word(s) in brackets

- Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. was 2. told 3. that
4. didn't 5. was washing 6. told
7. she 8. would 9. her
10. said

- Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. has been waiting 2. have been studding
3. since 4. was 5. has been
6. for 7. known 8. since
9. has been practicing 10. has been raining

- Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. who 2. which 3. which
4. who 5. who 6. which
7. which 8. who 9. which / that
10. that / which

- Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. where 2. who 3. whose
4. when 5. which 6. when
7. where 8. where 9. who
10. which / that

- Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. was written 2. are used 3. was made
4. was invented 5. by
6. is played 7. was marked 8. wasn't painted
9. grown 10. was invented

7- Dialogs

- Complete the following dialog.

1. Yes. 2. How did you go there?
3. Yes, we did. 4. Where did you stay?

- Complete the following dialog.

1. I don't understand. 2. What should we do?
3. You're right. 4. Why are they in danger?

- Complete the following dialog.

1. Of course. 2. What do I do next?
3. What is this 4. Yes.

- Complete the following dialog.

1. Yes, of course.
2. Where are the pyramids?

3. Yes, they are. 4. Who built them?

- Complete the following dialog.

1. I'm reading a book.
2. It's about climate change.
3. What is climate change? 4. Yes, it is.

8- Paragraph

- Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A tour of Rome

Rome is an exciting city filled with history and beauty. When you visit Rome, you can explore ancient places like the Colosseum, where gladiators once fought, and the Roman Forum, where important people made decisions long ago. You can toss a coin into the Trevi Fountain and make a wish. The Vatican City, home to the Pope, has St. Peter's Basilica and the Sistine Chapel, famous for its beautiful ceiling painted by Michelangelo. Don't forget to enjoy Italian food, like pizza, pasta, and gelato (Italian ice cream). Walking through Rome feels like traveling back in time. Everywhere you look, there are statues, fountains, and amazing buildings. Rome is a place full of stories waiting to be discovered!

Electric scooters

Electric scooters are fun and easy to use. They are small vehicles with two wheels that run on electricity, not fuel. You stand on the scooter and hold the handlebars to steer. To make it move, you press a button or twist the handle. Electric scooters are great for short trips, like going to school or visiting a friend. They don't make noise and are better for the environment because they don't produce smoke. Some scooters can go really fast, but you should always wear a helmet and follow safety rules. Riding an electric scooter can be a fun way to travel while helping to keep the air clean!

Elephant behavior

Elephants are amazing animals with interesting behaviors. They live in groups called herds, led by the oldest female, called the matriarch. Elephants are very social and take care of each other, especially the young ones. They use their trunks to eat, drink, and even greet their friends. Elephants love water and enjoy playing or bathing in rivers. They are also very smart and can remember places, people, and other elephants for a long time. When an elephant is happy, it might flap its ears or trumpet loudly. If an elephant feels sad or scared, it might stay close to its herd. Elephants are gentle giants with big hearts, and they show emotions just like us!

Should we protect animals?

Animals are an important part of our world. They give us food, help in farming, and make nature beautiful. Some animals are in danger because people cut down forests, hunt them, or pollute the water they live in. If animals disappear, the balance of nature can be broken. We should take care of them by protecting their homes, not hurting them, and cleaning the environment. Zoos and wildlife parks also help keep some animals safe. Every animal has a role in nature, from the smallest bug to the largest elephant. By protecting animals, we are helping to keep our planet healthy and happy for everyone!

Smartphones

Smartphones are amazing gadgets that many people use every day. They are like small computers that can fit in your pocket. With a smartphone, you can make calls, send messages, and take photos. You can also play games, watch videos, and learn new things using apps. Smartphones help us stay connected with family and friends, no matter where they are. They are also useful for schoolwork, as you can search for information and do online classes. But it's important to use smartphones wisely. Too much screen time can hurt your eyes and take time away from playing or studying. Remember, smartphones are tools to help us, so use them in a good and smart way!

Model Answers

A visit to the Science Museum

Last week, I visited the Science Museum with my class. It was so exciting! We saw many amazing things, like a big rocket and a robot that could talk. There were colorful displays showing how the planets move around the sun. My favorite part was the interactive section, where I got to play with gadgets that explained how electricity works. We also learned about animals and how they live in different environments. The guide told us fun facts, like how bats use sound to see in the dark. The visit was not only fun but also taught me so much about the world. I can't wait to visit again and explore even more!

Write an email to your friend Hani about your trip to Paris.

From : ali@yahoo.com.
To : hani@yahoo.com.
Subject : My Trip to Paris!

Hi Hani,

I hope you're doing well. I just got back from my trip to Paris, and I would like to tell you all about it! Paris is such a beautiful city. I saw the Eiffel Tower—it is huge and sparkly at night! We also visited the Louvre Museum, where I saw the Mona Lisa. The streets were filled with little cafés, and the croissants were so delicious.

I also went on a boat trip on the Seine River. The view of the city from the water was amazing. I wish you were there with me; you would've loved it. Let's meet soon so I can tell you more.

Yours,
Ali

General Questions On The Story

1) Match the words (1–6) to their definitions (a–f). SB

1. d 2. a 3. f
4. b 5. c 6. e

2) Fill in with words from the list. SB

1. servant 2. mirror 3. stocks
4. inn 5. judge 6. release
7. crowned

3) Read and match. SB

a. 3 b. 4 c. 2 d. 5 e. 1

4) Correct the mistake in each sentence. SB

1. three: five 2. Miles and Edward: Miles only
3. rich: poor 4. bed: mirror
5. duck: hen 6. Tom: Edward
7. hobbies: life 8. sailor: soldier
9. sell the house: give the house back to Miles
10. (No mistakes)

5) Read and circle T (true) or F (false). SB

1. F / easy: difficult 2. T 3. T
4. T 5. F / Tom's : Edward's
6. T 7. F / handbag: hen 8. T

6) Answer the following questions. SB

1. He told him about his life.
2. After he had a fight with his younger brother.
3. Arthur took Miles's home, Hendon Hall.
4. He promised to speak to Arthur and to make him give back the home to Miles.
5. Because he missed his sisters and his mother, and wanted to play with his friends.
6. A man on the road told him he saw two boys. One of the boys said he was the king, so he knew it was Edward.
7. Because Miles had a fight with his brother.
8. He was accused of stealing the hen.
9. No, because he was a good man and his brother took his home.
10. He decided to punish both of them.
11. He went to London.
12. When Miles put some money into her basket.
13. He decided not to punish Edward, but he put Miles in the stocks.
14. He knew where the Great Seal was.
15. Yes, because he knew how poor people lived.
16. He missed his sisters and his mother.
17. He pretended to be very ill and in great pain.
18. His brother, Arthur.
19. Because Miles helped him.
20. He wrote a letter.

7) Answer the following questions. WB

a. He worked as a soldier.

b. He told Edward that Miles Hendon was waiting for him at Southwark Bridge.

c. Because some of the words used in the palace were new to him.

d. Because he ate a lot of food at breakfast.

e. To get money from the gentleman.

f. Because Miles had a fight with his brother Arthur.

g. Miles told the judge that Edward was young and he did nothing wrong.

h. Tom was getting ready to be king.

i. His brother Arthur.

j. When she found the money Miles put in her basket.

8) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. SB

1. an inn
2. his brother
3. a sword
4. Southwark Bridge
5. two servants
6. Thief! Thief!
7. a judge
8. be crowned king
9. the Great Seal

9) Circle the correct word. WB

a. brother
b. Southwark Bridge
c. servants
d. wanted to
e. dishonest
f. paying
g. Miles
h. Great Seal

10) Match the words to the definitions (a–g). WB

a. inn
b. stocks
c. crowned
d. rotten
e. servant
f. sword
g. judge

11) Complete the table with information about the characters. WB

Edward	saved a man from the stocks	was a good king
Miles Hendon	was a good soldier and a kind man	became one of the king's men
Hugo	was a thief	pretended to be ill
Tom	signed important papers at the palace	wrote Prince and the Pauper

End of term (2) test

1) Circle the correct words.

a. taught
b. who
c. didn't play
d. has been working
e. said
f. were made

2) Complete the conversations. Use the prompts and the correct form of the verbs.

a. I'll show you.

b. He said that he was going to Italy.

c. She has been learning Spanish for three years.

d. Apples are grown in the UK.

e. Yes,I have. I'm going to study Biology.

f. She said it wasn't very interesting.

3) Read and circle.

a. which
b. who
c. who
d. was
e. felt
f. who

4) Underline and then correct the mistakes. There are two mistakes in each sentence.

a. download: downloaded / ap: app

b. off: around / skooter: scooter

c. headfones: headphones / are: were

d. will use: use / digitil : digital

5) Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

a. battery
b. airplane
c. motorbike
d. tourists
e. screen

6) Underline and then correct the mistakes.

a. protect: to protect / see: sea

b. beautifully : beautiful / animal : animals

c. to learn : learn / behaviour : behave

d. wales: whales / looks : look

e. loving: love / to : too

f. being : be / seen never : never seen

g. took: take

h. lives : live / fishes : fish

7) Read the text quickly. Choose the best title.

Student's answer

8) Read the text again and choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

a. make it a popular city for tourists.

b. by boat or on foot.

c. paintings by Rembrandt.

d. in spring.

9) Write an informal letter to a relative.

20 Orabi St,
Cairo,
July 6th, 2024

Dear Uncle Amr,

Hope you're well! I'm writing to tell you about my new club.

I've joined a new after-school club. It's about programming. I love computer studies and we're learning to write computer code.

Yesterday, I met some new friends at the club. We had a great time together. I've made a story with a funny cat! It was amazing. I'm very excited here.

CU Soon!

Omar

Exam (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Rome 2. big
3. Roman 4. ice cream

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. desk computer 2. tour guide
3. telephone

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. apps 2. boat
3. going 4. science

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. popular 2. safe

B) 3. Electric scooters. 4. Electric scooters.
5. They have no engine. 6. Yes, I think so.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. was making 2. cleaning 3. which

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. Was 2. which
3. since 4. told

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. I went to the zoo. 2. I went with my family.
3. How did you go there?
4. Did you enjoy there?

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Is technology good for us?

Technology can be very good for us if we use it the right way. It helps us learn new things, talk to friends and family, and makes our lives easier. For example, computers and the internet help us do homework and find information quickly. Phones let us call people anytime, and video games can be fun to play. But, we need to be careful. Too much screen time can hurt our eyes, and sitting too long is not healthy. It's also important to spend time with friends and family, not just with devices. So, technology is good when we use it wisely. It's like a tool that helps us, but we should not let it control us!

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Edward 2. Tom 3. Miles

B) Answer the following questions:

1. About his life. 2. Yes, he was.
3. In the stocks.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Smartphones 2. turn on
3. Robots 4. easier

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. keep 2. invented 3. Develop

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. technology 2. popular
3. post 4. for

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. kinds 2. look after

B) 3. It refers to elephants.
4. Elephant behavior.
5. Several types of behavior.
6. Yes, they feel sad when other elephants die.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. isn't used 2. enjoyed 3. where

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. when 2. has been raining

3. Was 4. said

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. I went to Luxor. 2. We went by train.

3. Did you go sightseeing?

4. Where did you stay?

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on.

Smartphones

Smartphones are very useful devices that help us do many things. With a smartphone, we can call and send messages to our friends and family. We can take pictures, watch videos, and even play fun games. Smartphones also help us learn by finding answers to questions on the internet.

However, we should use smartphones carefully. Spending too much time on a smartphone can hurt our eyes and make us feel tired. It's important to put them down and spend time with friends, play outside, or read a book. Smartphones are great tools that make life easier, but we should use them in a way that keeps us happy and healthy.

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Edward 2. A servant 3. Miles

B) Answer the following questions:

1. Because Miles had a fight with his brother.

2. He was very tired and lay down on the bed.

3. Yes, because he knew how poor people live.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Park 2. USA

3. 5,000 4. largest

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. airplane 2. historical 3. ethologist

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. pollution 2. renewable

3. wind 4. make

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. climate change 2. sun

B) 3. Global warming.

4. It helps to turn the desert into farms.

5. Because it affects all living things.

6. By using renewable energy.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. that 2. is made 3. for

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. are sold 2. has been cleaning

3. where 4. have known

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. I'd prefer to go swimming.

2. Good idea.

3. When could we meet?

4. What movie will be on?

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A visit a historical site

Visiting a historical site is always exciting! One day, I went to an old castle with my family. The castle was big and made of stone. It had tall towers and thick walls to keep people safe long ago. Inside, we saw ancient rooms, old furniture, and paintings. There were secret passages and big wooden doors. We learned that kings and queens once lived there. A guide told us interesting stories about how people lived in the past. I felt like I went back in time! Visiting the castle taught me a lot about history. It was fun and amazing to see how people lived many years ago. I hope to visit more historical places soon!

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. A servant 2. Hugo 3. Edward

B) Answer the following questions:

1. Pauper's clothes. 2. Three servants.

3. With his brother, Arthur.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. paintings 2. 20

3. 25 4. online

Model Answers

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. clear 2. delay 3. Monkeys

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. per 2. engineers
3. noise 4. in

4) Read the following text and answer the questions

A) 1. diving 2. Africa

B) 3. It's delicious. 4. Egypt.
5. To enjoy its ancient places. 6. Egypt.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. did 2. has been raining 3. who

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. was repaired 2. has been running
3. who 4. told

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. Hi, Heba. I'm reading a story.
2. What is it called?
3. No, I'd prefer to watch a movie.
4. What kind of movies do you like watching?

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Renewable energy

Renewable energy is energy that comes from nature and never runs out. It is clean and good for the Earth. Some examples of renewable energy are sunlight, wind, water, and heat from the ground. Solar energy uses the sun to make electricity, and wind energy uses wind to turn big turbines. Water can also make power in dams. These types of energy do not pollute the air like burning coal or oil does. Renewable energy helps us protect the planet and save natural resources. It also gives us energy that we can use forever. Using more renewable energy is a smart way to keep the Earth safe and clean for everyone!

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Edward 2. Hugo 3. Miles

B) Answer the following questions:

1. She wanted to sell a hen.
2. He knew where the Great Seal was.
3. Tom

Exam (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Rome 2. sightseeing
3. tour guide 4. history

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. souvenir 2. flight 3. Design

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. hiking 2. campsites
3. follow 4. both

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. people 2. Many

B) 3. They should eat lots of fruits and vegetables and drink a lot of water and milk.
4. Three meals.
5. Not to have too many sugary drinks and not to stay at home all the time.
6. To keep healthy.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Is 2. where 3. for

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. has been 2. which
3. didn't 4. whose

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. We're going to Rome.
2. How are you going to travel?
3. What will you do there?
4. Thank you.

8) Write an informal email.

From : maged@yahoo.com.
To : basil@yahoo.com.
Subject: My amazing vacation

Hi Maged,

I hope you're doing great! I want to tell you about my vacation. I went to Hurghada with my family, and it was so much fun! The sea was clear, and I swam every day. We built sandcastles, played games, and ate yummy ice cream.

One day, we went on a boat ride, and I even saw some dolphins jumping in the water. It was amazing! At night, we sat by the beach and watched the stars. It was so peaceful.

I wish you were there with me! Tell me about your vacation too. I can't wait to hear from you.

Love,

Basil

9) The Reader.

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Miles 2. Arthur 3. Arthur

B) Answer the following questions:

1. He was accused of stealing a hen.

2. Arthur, Miles's brother.

3. He was getting ready to be crowned king.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. online 2. computers

3. expensive 4. teachers

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. download 2. turn on 3. streetcar

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. culture 2. said

3. camel 4. tent

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. six days a week

2. the Museum of the Islamic Art

B) 3. Historical places in Egypt. 4. In Cairo.

5. Because it helps us know more about our country.

6. To protect Cairo.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. was made 2. where 3. have been living

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. who 2. long

3. said 4. which

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. My favorite subject is computer studies.

2. What do you learn in it?

3. Why do you like it?

4. I'm going to be a computer programmer.

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Online learning

Online learning can be a good way to learn. It is becoming very popular all over the world. Many students complete homework or use educational apps online to do extra revision. Teachers can mark homework and check progress either with a teacher or through an app. Most online classes can be as interesting as classes in school. Teachers work very hard to make the classes fun and interesting for their students, both in the classroom and online. However, online learning will probably never be as fun as going to school and meeting your friends and teachers in person.

9) The Reader.

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Edward 2. The judge 3. Miles

B) Answer the following questions:

1. Two servants. 2. He wrote a letter.

3. A big, brown hen.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. cultures 2. reeds

3. wind 4. heat

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. battery 2. airplane 3. tourists

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. since 2. electric

3. dangerous 4. movie

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. words 2. films

B) 3. Learning English.

4. You can guess their meaning or look them up in a dictionary.

5. To use the words you learn.

6. words

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. who 2. didn't 3. were made

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. has 2. said

3. who 4. was built

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. I'd like to buy a jacket, please.

2. What size would you like?

3. Grey, please. 4. Does this fit?

Model Answers

...ite a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Elephant behavior

Elephants are big and smart animals. They live in groups called herds, and they take care of each other like a family. The oldest female elephant, called the matriarch, leads the herd. Elephants are very gentle and love to help their friends. If one elephant is hurt, others try to help it. They also play together and enjoy splashing water when they find a river or pond. Elephants use their trunks for many things, like picking up food, drinking water, or giving themselves a shower! They also make loud sounds, like trumpets, to talk to each other. Elephants are kind and caring animals, and we can learn a lot from their behavior.

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Edward 2. Miles 3. Hugo

B) Answer the following questions:

1. They threw rotten eggs and fruit at him.
2. They went to London.
3. It was a horrible place.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Cairo 2. wealthy
3. housewife 4. flying

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. tent 2. trails 3. opinion

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. told 2. on
3. advice 4. House

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. garden 2. surprised

B) 3. She's 18.

4. Because he thought she was interested in reading.
5. To pick up some oranges.
6. The books.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. which 2. since 3. who

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. are used 2. was doing
3. was closed 4. have known

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. We went to Sharm El-Sheikh.
2. How did you go to Sharm El-Sheikh?
3. How long did you stay there?
4. Yes, we did.

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Using technology carefully

Technology, like computers, smartphones, and tablets, is very helpful and fun. It helps us learn, play games, and talk to friends and family. But we should use it carefully to stay healthy and happy. We should not spend too much time in front of screens because it can hurt our eyes and make us feel tired. Taking breaks and doing other activities like playing outside or reading a book is important. We also need to stay safe online. We should not share personal information, like our address or phone number, with strangers. It's always good to ask an adult for help if we are not sure. Using technology wisely makes it fun and safe for everyone!

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers.

1. Lord Hertford 2. Tom 3. Edward

B) Answer the following questions:

1. With his brother Arthur.
2. Because he knew how poor people lived.
3. He went to France.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. code 2. instructions
3. programmers 4. work

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. gadget 2. laboratory 3. education

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. history 2. Romans
3. lasting 4. amazing

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. pleased 2. hospital

B) 3. Mrs Huda 4. A happy family.

5. To give the students more lessons and help them with their homework.

6. Because she was very kind and helpful.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. that 2. has been cleaning 3. which

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. Was 2. was leaving

3. How long 4. whose

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. It's nice to meet you, too

2. Where are you from?

3. No 4. How long will you stay?

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A computer programmer

Computer programmer is a person who writes instructions for computers to follow. These instructions are called codes. Programmers use codes to create things like games, apps, and websites. They solve problems by thinking carefully and finding smart ways to make computers work better. Computer programmers often work on exciting projects. For example, they can design apps to help people learn or create fun video games. Programmers need to be patient and good at solving puzzles because writing codes can sometimes be tricky. Their work is very important because we use computers and apps every day. If you like computers and thinking of new ideas, you could become a computer programmer too!

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Edward 2. Lord Hertford

3. The judge

B) Answer the following questions:

1. It was behind the mirror in Edward's bedroom.

2. He shouted, "Thief! Thief!"

3. The judge.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. motorbike 2. bad

3. noisy 4. scooters

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. do 2. tourist 3. back

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. history 2. delicious

3. tourists 4. modern

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. keep safe 2. mirror

B) 3. Objects 4. Ancient objects

5. They were amazing.

6. To help them paint around their eyes.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. have been learning 2. was made

3. whose

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. are called 2. loved

3. which 4. since

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. Because I was ill.

2. What is wrong with you?

3. Yes, I did.

4. Thank you.

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Your favorite sport

My favorite sport is football. I love playing it with my friends because it is so much fun! Football is a team sport, and everyone works together to score goals. It makes me feel happy and excited. I like running on the field and kicking the ball. It helps me stay strong and healthy. Watching football matches on TV is also exciting. My favorite team is very good, and I cheer for them every time they play. Football teaches me to be a good teammate and never give up. It also helps me make new friends. I want to practice more and become a great football player one day!

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Miles 2. Edward 3. Tom

B) Answer the following questions:

1. He missed his sisters and his mother.
2. To beg for money.
3. It was brown.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. online 2. smartphones
3. looking 4. away

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. flight 2. pigeons 3. cute

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. desert 2. carry
3. on 4. climates

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. wise 2. farmer

B) 3. To sell the land.

4. No, because he wanted to teach them a lesson.

5. They bought books on farming to read. 6. Buy.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. was 2. for 3. who

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. which 2. have been reading
3. was invented 4. whose

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. I'm fine, thank you.
2. How many people are there in your family?
3. When do you get?
4. Yes, I do.

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Your favorite hobby

My favorite hobby is reading. I enjoy sitting in a quiet place with a good book. Reading takes me to different worlds and teaches me new things. Sometimes, I read stories about brave heroes or magical lands. Other times, I learn about animals, history, or space. Reading makes me feel happy and helps me relax. I love visiting the library to find new books. My favorite time to read is before bed because it helps me sleep better. Everyone can enjoy reading, and there is always a book for everyone. It's a hobby that is fun and helps you grow!

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Edward 2. Miles 3. Tom

B) Answer the following questions:

1. It was a horrible place.
2. He was very tired and feel asleep.
3. Hugo.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. 1885 2. cheap
3. around 4. England

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. has been 2. Pandas 3. headphones

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. protect 2. better
3. opinion 4. some

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. black bears 2. smell

B) 3. It is about bears.

4. In North America, South America, Europe and Asia.

5. For their meat and fur.

6. No, because they are endangered.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. could 2. when 3. was cleaned

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. has 2. where
3. whose 4. is made

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. Good idea.
2. How can we go?
3. Who built it?
4. To protect Cairo.

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Your birthday

My birthday is my favorite day of the year.

On this special day, my family and friends celebrate with me. I wake up excited, knowing there will be a party. My mom bakes a yummy cake, and we decorate the house with balloons. I get presents from my loved ones, which makes me very happy. We play games, sing songs, and laugh together. My favorite part is blowing out the candles and making a wish. Everyone claps and cheers. Birthdays are fun because they remind me of how much I am loved. I can't wait for my next birthday!

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Edward 2. Miles 3. Tom

B) Answer the following questions:

1. He used Miles's sword.
2. To get money from the gentleman.
3. His brother, Aurthur.

Exam (13)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. London 2. exhibitions
3. understand 4. space

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Renewable 2. turned on 3. solution

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1. countryside 2. photograph
3. into 4. hole

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

A) 1. old 2. Hurghada

B) 3. Why tourists visit Egypt.
4. In winter.
5. To enjoy the wonderful weather of Luxor and Aswan.
6. Tourists.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. was written 2. who 3. told

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form.

1. are grown 2. who
3. his 4. long

7) Complete the following dialog.

1. Hello, Ibrahim
2. What is your favorite sport?
3. I like chess.
4. Did you win any competitions?

8) Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

A trip to the pyramids

Last weekend, I went on a trip to the pyramids with my family. It was an exciting day! When we arrived, I was amazed by how big and tall the pyramids are. We learned that they were built a very long time ago by the ancient Egyptians. We took lots of pictures and even rode a camel, which was so much fun. The guide told us stories about the pharaohs and how they built the pyramids. I felt like I was traveling back in time. At the end of the day, we had a picnic and watched the sunset. It was unforgettable!

9) The Reader:

A) Read the sentences and match them to the speakers:

1. Arthur 2. Edward 3. Lord Hertford

B) Answer the following questions:

1. Yes, because he knew how poor people lived.
2. Two servants.
3. They threw rotten eggs and fruit at him.